

Topics on Fundamental Science

D. T. McGuinness, Ph.D

M.Sc
Higher Mathematics II
Lecture Book

2025.SS



(2025, D. T. McGuines, Ph.D)

Current version is 2025.SS.

This document includes the contents of Higher Mathematics II, official name being *Höhere Mathematik 2*, taught at MCI in the Mechatronik Smart Technologies. This document is the part of the module MECH-M-2-HMA-HMA-ILV taught in the M.Sc degree.

All relevant code of the document is done using *SageMath* where stated using v10.3 and Python v3.13.1.

This document was compiled with LuaTeX v1.18.0, and all editing were done using GNU Emacs v29.4 using AUCTEX and org-mode package.

This document is based on the books and resources: *G. B. Thomas, Jr. et.al* by Thomas Calculus (12th Edition) , Pearson (2010) *A. Gut* by Probability: A Graduate Course , Springer (2005) *S.L. Sobolev* by Partial Differential Equations of Mathematical Physics , Addison Wesley (2019) *W. A. Strauss* by Partial Differential Equations - An Introduction , Wiley (2008) *R. E. Walpole, et. al* by Probability and Statistics for Engineers & Scientists , Pearson (2012) *M. L. Boas* by Mathematical Methods in the Physical Sciences (3rd Edition) , Wiley (2006) *K. F. Riley, et. al* by Mathematical Methods for Physics and Engineering (3rd Edition) , Cambridge (2006) *G. F. Simmons* by Differential Equations with Applications and Historical Notes (3rd Edition) , CRC Press (2017) *E. Kreyszig* by Advanced Engineering Calculus (9th Edition) , Wiley (2011) *D. C. Montgomery* by Applied Statistics and Probability for Engineers (3rd Edition) , Wiley (2003) *J. F. James* by A Students Guide to Fourier Transform , Cambridge (2011) *J. Crank* by Mathematics of Diffusion , Oxford (1975) *A. Sommerfeld* by Partial Differential Equations in Physics , Academic Press (1949) *E. Cinlar* by Probability and Stochastics , Springer (2010) *H. C. Berg* by Random Walks in Biology , Princeton (1983)

The current maintainer of this work along with the primary lecturer
is D. T. McGuines, Ph.D. (dtm@mci4me.at).

Contents

I	Probability and Statistics	3
1	Theory of Probability	5
1.1	Introduction	5
1.2	Experiments & Outcomes	9
1.2.1	Unions, Intersections, and Complements of Events	9
1.3	Probability	11
1.4	Permutations & Combinations	16
1.4.1	Permutations	16
1.4.2	Combinations	17
1.4.3	Factorial Function	18
1.4.4	Binomial Coefficients	19
1.5	Random Variables and Probability Distributions	20
1.5.1	Discrete Random Variables and Distributions	21
1.5.2	Continuous Random Variables and Distributions	22
1.6	Mean and Variance of a Distribution	24
1.7	Binomial, Poisson, and Hyper-geometric Distributions	27
1.7.1	Sampling with Replacement	30
1.7.2	Sampling without Replacement: Hyper-geometric Distribution	30
1.8	Normal Distribution	31
1.8.1	Distribution Function	32
1.8.2	Numeric Values	32
1.8.3	Normal Approximation of the Binomial Distribution	33
1.9	Distribution of Several Random Variables	34
1.9.1	Discrete Two-Dimensional Distribution	34
1.9.2	Continuous Two-Dimensional Distribution	35
1.9.3	Marginal Distributions of a Discrete Distribution	35
1.9.4	Marginal Distributions of a Continuous Distribution	36
1.9.5	Independence of Random Variables	37
1.9.6	Functions of Random Variables	38
1.9.7	Addition of Means	38
1.9.8	Addition of Variances	39
2	Statistical Methods	41
2.1	Introduction	41

2.2	Point Estimation of Parameters	45
2.2.1	Maximum Likelihood Method	46
2.3	Confidence Intervals	48
2.4	Testing of Hypotheses and Making Decisions	54
2.4.1	Errors in Tests	56
2.5	Quality Control	59
2.5.1	Control Chart for the Mean	60
2.5.2	Control Chart for the Variance	61
2.5.3	Control Chart for the Standard Deviation	61
2.5.4	Control Chart for the Range	62
2.6	Acceptance Sampling	63
2.6.1	Errors in Acceptance Sampling	64
2.6.2	Rectification	64
2.7	Goodness of Fit	66
2.8	Non-parametric Tests	69

II Solving Partial Differential Equations 71

3 Fourier Analysis 73

3.1	Fourier Series	73
3.1.1	Important Definitions	73
3.1.2	Deriving the Euler Formulas	77
3.1.3	Convergence and Sum of a Fourier Series	77
3.2	Functions with Arbitrary Periods	78
3.2.1	From Period 2π to Any Period $p = 2L$	78
3.2.2	Even and Odd Functions	80
3.2.3	Half-Range Expansions	82
3.3	Forced Oscillations	83
3.4	Approximation by Trigonometric Polynomials	85
3.5	Sturm–Liouville Problems	88
3.5.1	Eigenvalues and Eigenfunctions	88
3.5.2	Orthogonal Functions	90
3.6	Generalised Fourier Series	91
3.6.1	Mean Square Convergence. Completeness	92
3.7	Fourier Integrals	93
3.7.1	From Series to Integrals	93
3.7.2	Application Areas	94
3.8	Cosine and Sine Transforms	96
3.8.1	Cosine Transform	96
3.8.2	Sine Transform	96
3.9	Fourier Transform: Discrete and Fast	98
3.9.1	Complex Form of the Fourier Integral	98

3.9.2	Transform and Its Inverse	99
3.9.3	Interpretation: Spectrum	99
3.9.4	Discrete and Fast Fourier Transform	100
4	Partial Differential Equations	103
4.1	Introduction and Concepts	103
4.1.1	Concepts	104
4.2	Vibrating String - The Wave Equation	106
4.2.1	Deriving the Model From Forces	107
4.3	Separation of Variables	109
4.4	The Wave Equation - D'Alembert's Solution	116
4.4.1	D'Alembert's Solution Satisfying the Initial Conditions	117
4.4.2	Characteristics, Types, and Normal Forms of Partial Differential Equation (PDE)s	118
4.5	The Heat Equation	120
4.6	Solving the Heat Equation	122
4.6.1	Solving 2D Heat Equation	125
4.7	Heat Conduction in Long Bars	127
4.7.1	Use of Fourier Integrals	127
III	Appendix	131
A	Tables	133
A.1	Introduction	133
A.2	Special Functions	134
A.2.1	Bessel Function	134
A.2.2	Gamma Function	135
A.2.3	Error Function, Sine and Cosine Integrals	135
A.3	CDF Normal Distribution	137
A.4	Student-t Distribution	139
A.5	Chi-Square Distribution	141
A.6	F-Distribution	143
	Bibliography	149

List of Figures

1.1	The histogram of the data given in Exercise 1	7
1.2	Examples of Venn diagrams.	10
1.3	A visual comparison of the Stirling formula and the actual values of the factorial function.	18
1.4	A visual representation of the Eq. (1.42).	23
1.5	Binomial distribution with different values of probability with a sample size of 50. .	28
1.6	The Poisson distribution with different mean (μ) values.	29
1.7	The probability density distribution of hyper-geometric distribution with different parameters.	30
1.8	The poster child of probability and statistics, the normal distribution.	31
1.9	A visual representation between the relationship of PDF and CDF.	32
1.10	Many samples from a bivariate normal distribution. The marginal distributions are shown on the z-axis. The marginal distribution of X is also approximated by creating a histogram of the X coordinates without consideration of the Y coordinates. . .	35
2.1	Original map by John Snow showing the clusters of cholera cases in the London epidemic of 1854, drawn and lithographed by Charles Cheffins.	43
2.2	The student-t distribution with different degrees of freedom m	51
2.3	Chi-square distribution with different degrees of freedom.	52
2.4	The t -distribution used in example. As can be seen, anything left of the critical line would tell us to reject the hypothesis, whereas if the t value lies on the Right Hand Side (RHS), then the test would tell us the null hypothesis is true.	55
2.5	Illustration of Type I and II errors in testing a hypothesis $\theta = \theta_0$ against an alternative $\theta = \theta_0$	58
2.6	Control charts for the mean (upper part of figure) and the standard deviation in the case of the samples on p. 1089	59
2.7	OC curve of the sampling plan $n = 2$ and $c = 0$ for lots of size $N = 20$	63
2.8	The OC curve with Poisson process applied to it.	64
2.9	OC curve and AOQ curve for the sampling plan.	65
3.1	An example of a periodic function with a period of T	74
3.2	Cosine and sine functions having the period 2π (the first few members of the trigonometric system Eq. (3.2), except for the constant 1)	74
3.3	The given function $f(x)$ in Example	76
3.4	The consecutive sums of the corresponding Fourier series.	77
3.5	A Fourier series approximation of a half-wave rectification.	80

3.6	The sawtooth wave.	81
3.7	81
3.8	Illustrating the development of the Gibbs Phenomenon.	94
4.1	Deflected string at fixed time t	106
4.2	The normal modes of the vibrating string.	112
4.3	Second normal mode for various values of t	112

List of Tables

2.1	Useful c values based on a given confidence (γ) value.	49
2.2	Type I and Type II errors in testing a hypothesis $\theta = \theta_0$ against an alternative $\theta = \theta_1$	57
2.3	Twelve samples of five (5) values each (diameter of small cylinders, measured in mm)	60
2.4	Acceptance Sampling and Hypothesis Testing	65
4.1	Classification of PDEs.	118
4.2	Redefining the PDEs	119
A.1	Particular values of the Bessel function.	134
A.2	Particular values of the Gamma function	135
A.3	Particular values of error function along with sine and cosine integrals.	135
A.4	Values of z for given values of the distribution function $\Phi(z)$ with $\Phi(-z) = 1 - \Phi(z)$	137
A.5	Values of z for given values of the distribution function $F(z)$ with $m = 1 - 10$	139
A.6	Values of z for given values of the distribution function $F(z)$ with $m = 11 - 20$	139
A.7	Values of z for given values of the distribution function $F(z)$ with $m = 21 - 30$	140
A.8	Values of z for given values of the distribution function $F(z)$ with $m = 1 - 10$	141
A.9	Values of z for given values of the distribution function $F(z)$ with $m = 11 - 20$	141
A.10	Values of z for given values of the distribution function $F(z)$ with $m = 21 - 30$	141
A.11	Values of z for which the distribution function $F(z)$ has the value 0.95	143
A.12	Values of z for which the distribution function $F(z)$ has the value 0.95	144
A.13	Values of z for which the distribution function $F(z)$ has the value 0.99	146
A.14	Values of z for which the distribution function $F(z)$ has the value 0.99	147

List of Examples

1.1	Recording Data	6
1.2	Histogram	6
1.3	Empirical Rule Outliers and z-Score	8
1.4	Sample Spaces of Random Experiments & Events	9
1.5	Fair Die	11
1.6	Coin Tossing	12
1.7	Mutually Exclusive Events	13
1.8	Union of Arbitrary Events	13
1.9	Multiplication Rule	14
1.10	Sampling w/o Replacement	15
1.11	An Encrypted Message	17
1.12	Sampling Light-bulbs	18
1.13	Waiting Time Problem	22
1.14	Continuous Distribution	23
1.15	Mean and Variance	24
1.16	Binomial Distribution	28
1.17	Poisson Distribution	29
1.18	Marginal Distributions of a Discrete Two-Dimensional Random Variable	36
1.19	Independence and Dependence	37
2.1	Maximum Likelihood of Gaussian Distribution	47
2.2	Maximum Likelihood of Poisson Distribution	47
2.3	Confidence Interval for Mean with known Variance in Normal Distribution	49
2.4	Sample Size Needed for a Confidence Interval of Prescribed Length	50
2.5	Confidence Interval for Mean of Normal Distribution with Unknown Variance	51
2.6	Test for the Mean of the Normal Distribution with Known Variance	58
2.7	Printed Circuit Boards	67
2.8	Testing for Arbitrary Trend	69
3.1	Periodic Rectangular Waves	75
3.2	Periodic Rectangular Waves	79
3.3	Half-Wave Rectifier	79
3.4	Sawtooth Wave	81
3.5	A Non-Sinusoidal forced Oscillation	83

3.6	Vibrating String	89
3.7	Orthogonal Functions	90
3.8	Fourier-Legendre Series	91
3.9	Singular Pulses	94

List of Theorems

1.1	First Definition of Probability	11
1.2	General Definition of Probability	12
1.3	Complementation Rule	12
1.4	Addition Rule for Mutually Exclusive Events	13
1.5	Addition Rule for Arbitrary Events	13
1.6	Multiplication Rule	14
1.7	Permutations	16
1.8	Permutations	17
1.9	Combinations	18
1.10	Random Variable	20
1.11	Mean of a Symmetric Distribution	25
1.12	Transformation of Mean and Variance	25
1.13	Relationship between PDF and CDF	32
1.14	Normal Probabilities for Intervals	32
1.15	Limit Theorem of De Moivre and Laplace	33
1.16	Addition of Means	39
1.17	Multiplication of Means	39
1.18	Addition of Variances	40
2.1	Sum of Independent Normal Random Variables	49
2.2	Student's t-Distribution	51
2.3	Chi-Square Distribution	52
2.4	Central Limit Theorem	53
2.5	Chi-square Test for $F(x)$ being the Distribution Function of a Population	67
3.1	Orthogonality of Trigonometric Identities	77
3.2	Representation by a Fourier Series	77
3.3	Minimum Square Error	86
3.4	Existence of the Fourier Transform	99
4.1	Fundamental Theory of Superposition	105
4.2	Boundary Value Problem Types	125

Part I

Probability and Statistics

Chapter 1

Theory of Probability

Table of Contents

1.1	Introduction	5
1.2	Experiments & Outcomes	9
1.3	Probability	11
1.4	Permutations & Combinations	16
1.5	Random Variables and Probability Distributions	20
1.6	Mean and Variance of a Distribution	24
1.7	Binomial, Poisson, and Hyper-geometric Distributions	27
1.8	Normal Distribution	31
1.9	Distribution of Several Random Variables	34

1.1 Introduction

When the data we are working are influenced by “**chance**”, by factors whose effect we cannot predict exactly¹, we have to rely on **probability theory**. The application of this theory nowadays appears in numerous fields such as from studying a game of cards to the global financial market and allow us to model processes of chance called **random experiments**.

¹This could be weather data, stock prices, life spans or ties, etc.

In such an experiment we observe a **random variable** X , that is, a function whose values in a trial² occur “by chance” according to a **probability distribution** which gives the individual probabilities, which possible values of X may occur in the long run.

²a performance of an experiment.

i.e., each of the six faces of a die should occur with the same probability, $1/6$.

Or we may simultaneously observe more than one random variable, for instance, height and weight of persons or hardness and tensile strength of steel. But enough about spoiling all the fun and let's begin with looking at data.

Representing Data

Data can be represented numerically or graphically in different ways

i.e., a news website may contain tables of stock prices and currency exchange rates, curves or bar charts illustrating economical or political developments, or pie charts showing how inflation is calculated.

And there are numerous other representations of data for special purposes. In this section, we will discuss the use of standard representations of data in statistics³.

³There are various software dedicated to analyse and visualise statistical data. Some of these include: R, a statistical programming language, Python, MATLAB, ...

Exercise 1.1: Recording Data

Sample values, such as observations and measurements, should be recorded in the order in which they occur. Sorting, that is, ordering the sample values by size, is done as a first step of investigating properties of the sample and graphing it. As an example let's look at super alloys. Super alloys is a collective name for alloys used in jet engines and rocket motors, requiring high temperature (typically 1000° C), high strength, and excellent resistance to oxidation. Thirty (30) specimens of Hastelloy C (nickel-based steel, investment cast) had the tensile strength (in 1000 lb>sq in.), recorded in the order obtained and rounded to integer values.

89 77 88 91 88 93 99 79 87 84 86 82 88 89 78

90 91 81 90 83 83 92 87 89 86 89 81 87 84 89

(1.1)

Of course depending on the need the data needs to be sorted which is shown below:

77 78 79 81 81 82 83 83 84 84 86 86 87 87 87

88 88 88 89 89 89 89 89 90 90 91 91 92 93 99

Graphic Representation of Data

Let's now use the data we have seen in Example 1 and see the methods we can use for graphic representations.

Exercise 1.2: Histogram

For large sets of data, histograms are better in displaying the distribution of data than stem-and-leaf plots. The principle is explained in Fig. 1.1.

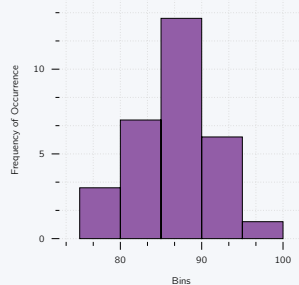


Figure 1.1: The histogram of the data given in Exercise 1.

The bases of the rectangles in seen in Fig. 1.1 are the x -intervals⁴ where there range is:

$$74.5 - 79.5, \quad 79.5 - 84.5, \quad 84.5 - 89.5, \\ 89.5 - 94.5, \quad 94.5 - 99.5,$$

whose midpoints, known as **class marks**, are

$$x = 77, 82, 87, 92, 97,$$

respectively. The height of a rectangle with class mark x is the relative class frequency $f_{\text{rel}}(x)$, defined as the number of data values in that class interval, divided by n ($= 30$ in our case). Hence the areas of the rectangles are proportional to these relative frequencies,

$$0.10, 0.23, 0.43, 0.17, 0.07,$$

so that histograms give a good impression of the distribution of data.

⁴known as class intervals.

Mean, Standard Deviation, and Variance

Medians and quartiles are easily obtained by ordering and counting⁵.

However this method does not give full information on data as you can change data values to some extent without changing the median.

⁵This can be done without the need of calculators.

The average size of the data values can be measured in a more refined way by the mean:

$$\bar{x} = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{j=1}^n x_j = \frac{1}{n} (x_1 + x_2 + \cdots + x_n). \quad (1.2)$$

This is the **arithmetic mean** of the data values, obtained by taking their sum and dividing by the data size (n). Therefore the arithmetic mean for Eq. (1.1) is:

$$\bar{x} = \frac{1}{30} (89 + 77 + \cdots + 89) = \frac{260}{3} \approx 86.7 \quad \blacksquare$$

As we can see every data value contributes, and changing one of them will change the mean. Similarly, the spread⁶ of the data values can be measured in a more refined way by the **standard deviation** s or by its square, the variance⁷

⁶also known as variability.

⁷The symbol for variance is interesting as each domain have their own definition, as s^2 , σ^2 and $\text{Var}()$ are all acceptable symbols.

$$s^2 = \frac{1}{n-1} \sum_{j=1}^n (x_j - \bar{x})^2 = \frac{1}{n-1} [(x_1 - \bar{x})^2 + \cdots + (x_n - \bar{x})^2] \quad (1.3)$$

Therefore, to obtain the variance of the data, take the difference (i.e., $x_j - \bar{x}$) of each data value from the mean, square it, take the sum of these n squares, and divide it by $n - 1$.

To get the standard deviation s , take the square root of s^2 .

⁸which we calculated previously

Returning back to our super alloy example, using $\bar{x} = 260/3^8$, we get for the data given in Eq. (1.1) the variance:

$$s^2 = \frac{1}{29} \left[\left(89 - \frac{260}{3} \right)^2 + \left(77 - \frac{260}{3} \right)^2 + \cdots + \left(89 - \frac{260}{3} \right)^2 \right] = \frac{2006}{87} \approx 23.06 \quad \blacksquare$$

Therefore, the standard deviation is calculated to be:

$$s = \sqrt{2006/87} \approx 4.802$$

The standard deviation has the same dimension as the data values, which is an advantage, whereas, the variance is preferable to the standard deviation in developing statistical methods.

Empirical Rule

For any round-shaped symmetric distribution of data the intervals:

$$\bar{x} \pm s, \quad \bar{x} \pm 2s, \quad \bar{x} \pm 3s, \quad \text{contain about} \quad 68\%, \quad 95\%, \quad 99.7\%.$$

respectively, of the data points. This information is quite useful in doing quick calculation of statistical properties such as the quality of production which will be the focus in Chapter 2.

Exercise 1.3: Empirical Rule Outliers and z-Score

For the data set given in Example 1.1, with $\bar{x} = 86.7$ and $s = 4.8$, the three (3) intervals in the Rule are:

$$81.9 \leq x \leq 91.5, \quad 77.1 \leq x \leq 96.3, \quad 72.3 \leq x \leq 101.1$$

and contain 73% (22 values remain, 5 are too small, and 5 too large), 93% (28 values, 1 too small, and 1 too large), and 100%, respectively.

If we reduce the sample by omitting the outlier value of 99, mean and standard deviation reduce to $\bar{x}_{\text{red}} = 86.2$, and $s_{\text{red}} = 4.3$, approximately, and the percentage values become 67% (5 and 5 values outside), 93% (1 and 1 outside), and 100%.

Finally, the relative position of a value x in a set of mean \bar{x} and standard deviation s can be measured by the **z-score**:

$$z(s) = \frac{x - \bar{x}}{s}$$

This is the distance of x from the mean \bar{x} measured in multiples of s . For instance:

$$z(s) = \frac{(83 - 86.7)}{4.8} = -0.77$$

This is negative because 83 lies below the mean. By the empirical rule, the extreme z-values are about -3 and 3. \blacksquare

1.2 Experiments & Outcomes

Now we have the basis covered, it is time to look at probability theory⁹. This theory has the purpose of providing mathematical models of situations affected or even governed by **change effects**, for instance, in weather forecasting, life insurance, quality of technical products (computers, batteries, steel sheets, etc.), traffic problems, and, of course, games of chance with cards or dice, and the accuracy of these models can be tested by suitable observations or experiments.

⁹Sometimes known as probability calculus.

Let's start by defining some standard terms:

experiment A process of measurement or observation, in a laboratory, in a factory, ...

randomness Situation where absolute prediction is not possible.

trial A single performance of an experiment

outcome The result of a trial¹⁰

¹⁰also known as sample point.

sample space Defined as S , is the set of all possible outcomes of an experiment.

Exercise 1.4: Sample Spaces of Random Experiments & Events

- Inspecting a lightbulb | $S = \{\text{Defective, Non-defective}\}$.
 - Rolling a die | $S = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$
- events are
- $A = 1, 3, 5$ ("Odd number")
 - $B = 2, 4, 6$ ("Even number"), etc.
- Counting daily traffic accidents in Vienna | $S = \{\text{the integers in some interval}\}$.

1.2.1 Unions, Intersections, and Complements of Events

In connection with basic probability laws we also need the following concepts and facts about events¹¹ A, B, C, \dots of a given sample space S .

¹¹called subsets of the probability event S .

■ The **union** $A \cup B$ of A and B consists of all points in A or B or both.

■ The **intersection** $A \cap B$ of A and B consists of all points that are in both A and B .

If A and B have **no** points in common, we write

$$A \cap B = \emptyset$$

where \emptyset is the empty set¹² and we call A and B **mutually exclusive** (or **disjoint**) as, in a trial, the occurrence of A *excludes* that of B (and conversely)—if your die turns up an odd number, it cannot turn up an even number in the same trial, or a coin cannot turn up Head (H) and Tail (T) at the

¹²This means it is a set which contains nothing.

same time.

¹³Another notation for the complement of A is \bar{A} (instead of A^c), but we shall not use this because in set theory \bar{A} is used to denote the *closure* of A .

■ The **Complement** of A is A^{c13} . This is the set of all the points of S *not* in A . Therefore,

$$A \cap A^c = \emptyset, \quad A \cup A^c = S.$$

Unions and intersections of more events are defined similarly. The **union**:

$$\bigcup_{j=1}^m A_j = A_1 \cup A_2 \cup \cdots \cup A_m.$$

of events A_1, \dots, A_m consists of all points that are in at least one A_j . Similarly for the union $A_1 \cup A_2 \cup \cdots$ of infinitely many subsets A_1, A_2, \dots of an *infinite* sample space S (that is, S consists of infinitely many points). The **intersection**:

$$\bigcap_{j=1}^m A_j = A_1 \cap A_2 \cap \cdots \cap A_m$$

of A_1, \dots, A_m consists of the points of S that are in each of these events. Similarly for the intersection $A_1 \cap A_2 \cap \cdots$ of infinitely many subsets of S .

Working with events can be illustrated and facilitated by **Venn diagrams** for showing unions, intersections, and complements, as in **Fig. 1.2**, which are typical examples expressing the concept covered previously.

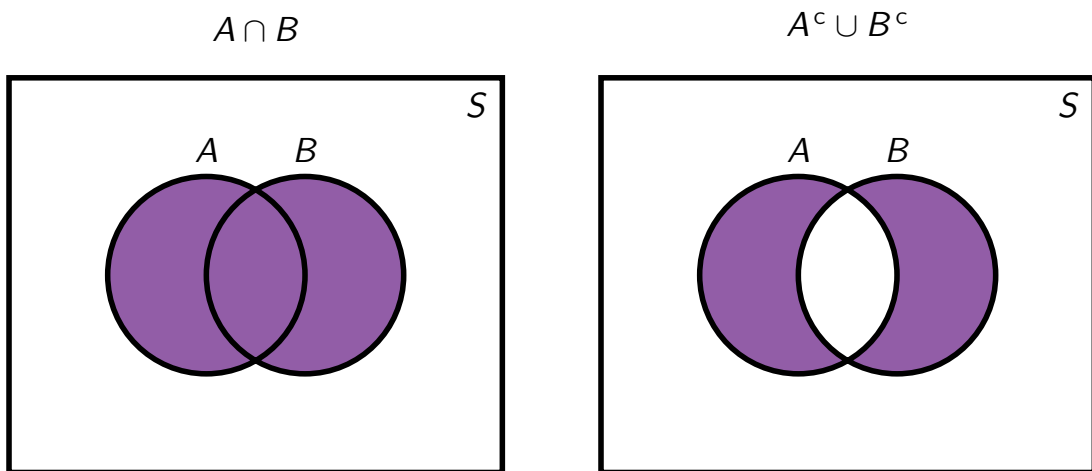


Figure 1.2: Examples of Venn diagrams.

1.3 Probability

The **probability** of an event A in an experiment is to measure **how frequently** A is roughly to occur if we make many trials. If we flip a coin, then heads H and tails T will appear **about** equally¹⁴ often.

¹⁴on the condition, the measurements are done for a long time.

we say that H and T are **"equally likely."**

Similarly, for a regularly shaped die of homogeneous material¹⁵ each of the six (6) outcomes $1, \dots, 6$ will be equally likely. These are examples of experiments in which the sample space S consists of finitely many outcomes (points) that for reasons of some symmetry can be regarded as equally likely.

¹⁵called a fair dice

Let's formulate this in a theory.

Theory 1.1: First Definition of Probability

If the sample space S of an experiment consists of **finitely** many outcomes (points) being equally likely, the probability $P(A)$ of an event A is defined to be:

$$P(A) = \frac{\text{Number of points in } A}{\text{Number of points in } S}.$$

From this definition it follows immediately, in particular, the probability of all events occurring in the sample space S is:

$$P(S) = 1.$$

Exercise 1.5: Fair Die

In rolling a fair die once:

1. What is the probability $P(A)$ of A of obtaining a 5 or a 6?
2. The probability of B : "Even number"?

Solution

The six outcomes are equally likely, so that each has probability $1/6$. Therefore:

$$P(A) = \frac{2}{6} = \frac{1}{3} \quad \text{and} \quad P(B) = \frac{3}{6} = \frac{1}{2} \quad \blacksquare$$

The above theory takes care of many games as well as some practical applications, but not of all experiments, as in many problems we do not have finitely many equally likely outcomes. To arrive at a more general definition of probability, we regard probability as the counterpart of **relative frequency**:

$$f_{\text{rel}}(A) = \frac{f(A)}{n} = \frac{\text{Number of times } A \text{ occurs}}{\text{Number of trials}} \quad (1.4)$$

Now if A did not occur, then $f(A) = 0$. If A always occurred, then $f(A) = n$. These are of course extreme cases. Division by n gives:

$$0 \leq f_{\text{rel}}(A) \leq 1 \quad (1.5)$$

In particular, for $A = S$ we have $f(S) = n$ as S always occurs¹⁶. Division by n gives:

¹⁶meaning that some event always occurs

$$f_{\text{rel}}(S) = 1 \quad (1.6)$$

Finally, if A and B are **mutually exclusive**, they cannot occur together. Therefore the absolute frequency of their union $A \cup B$ must equal the sum of the absolute frequencies of A and B . Division

by n gives the same relation for the relative frequencies:

$$f_{\text{rel}}(A \cup B) = f_{\text{rel}}(A) + f_{\text{rel}}(B) \quad (1.7)$$

We can now extend the definition of probability to experiments in which equally likely outcomes are not available.

Theory 1.2: General Definition of Probability

Given a sample space S , with each event A of S (A being a subset of S) there is associated a number $P(A)$, called the **probability** of A , such the following **axioms of probability** are satisfied.

- For every A in S ,

$$0 \leq P(A) \leq 1. \quad (1.8)$$

- The entire sample space S has the probability

$$P(S) = 1. \quad (1.9)$$

- For **mutually exclusive** events A and B :

$$P(A \cup B) = P(A) + P(B) \quad (A \cap B = \emptyset). \quad (1.10)$$

- If S is infinite¹⁷, the previous statement has to be replaced by Eq. (1.4), where for mutually exclusive events A_1, A_2, \dots ,

$$P(A_1 \cup A_2 \cup \dots) = P(A_1) + P(A_2) + \dots. \quad (1.11)$$

In the infinite case the subsets of S on which $P(A)$ is defined are restricted to form a so-called σ -algebra.

¹⁷i.e., has infinitely many points.

Basic Theorems of Probability

We will see that the axioms of probability will enable us to build up probability theory and its application to statistics. We begin with three (3) basic theorems. The first one is useful if we can get the probability of the complement A^c more easily than $P(A)$ itself.

Theory 1.3: Complementation Rule

For an event A and its complement A^c in a sample space S ,

$$P(A^c) = 1 - P(A) \quad (1.12)$$

Exercise 1.6: Coin Tossing

Five (5) coins are tossed simultaneously.

Find the probability of the event A :

At least one head turns up. Assume that the coins are fair.

Solution

As each coin can turn up either heads or tails, the sample space consists of $2^5 = 32$ outcomes. Given the coins are fair, we may assign the same probability ($1/32$) to each outcome. Then the event A^c (No heads turn up) consists of only 1 outcome. Hence $P(A^c) = 1/32$, and the answer is:

$$P(A) = 1 - P(A^c) = \frac{31}{32} \quad \blacksquare$$

Theory 1.4: Addition Rule for Mutually Exclusive Events

For **mutually exclusive events** A_1, \dots, A_m in a sample space S ,

$$P(A_1 \cup A_2 \cup \dots \cup A_m) = P(A_1) + P(A_2) + \dots + P(A_m). \quad (1.13)$$

Exercise 1.7: Mutually Exclusive Events

If the probability that on any workday a garage will get 10-20, 21-30, 31-40, over 40 cars to service is 0.20, 0.35, 0.25, 0.12, respectively, what is the probability that on a given workday the garage gets at least 21 cars to service?

Solution

As these are mutually exclusive events, the answer is:

$$0.35 + 0.25 + 0.12 = 0.72 \quad \blacksquare$$

However, most situations, events will **NOT** be mutually exclusive. Then we have the following theorem to formalise the previous statement.

Theory 1.5: Addition Rule for Arbitrary Events

For events A and B in a sample space, their union is defined as:

$$P(A \cup B) = P(A) + P(B) - P(A \cap B). \quad (1.14)$$

For **mutually exclusive** events A and B we have $A \cap B = \emptyset$ by definition:

$$P(\emptyset) = 0 \quad (1.15)$$

Exercise 1.8: Union of Arbitrary Events

In tossing a fair die, what is the probability of getting an odd number or a number less than 4?

Solution

Let A be the event "Odd number" and B the event "Number less than 4." As these events are linked we can write:

$$P(A \cup B) = \frac{3}{6} + \frac{3}{6} - \frac{2}{6} = \frac{2}{3}$$

as $A \cup B = \text{Odd number less than 4} = \{1, 3\} \quad \blacksquare$

Conditional Probability and Independent Events

It is often required to find the probability of an event B given the condition of an event A occurs. This probability is called the **conditional probability** of B given A and is denoted by $P(B|A)$.

In this case A serves as a new, reduced, sample space, and that probability is the fraction of $P(A)$ which corresponds to $A \cap B$. Therefore,

$$P(A|B) = \frac{P(A \cap B)}{P(B)} \quad \text{where} \quad P(B) \neq 0 \quad (1.16)$$

Similarly, the conditional probability of A given B is:

$$P(B|A) = \frac{P(A \cap B)}{P(A)} \quad \text{where} \quad P(A) \neq 0 \quad (1.17)$$

Theory 1.6: Multiplication Rule

Given A and B are events defined in a sample space S and $P(A) \neq 0, P(B) \neq 0$, then

$$P(A \cap B) = P(A) P(B|A) = P(B) P(A|B). \quad (1.18)$$

Exercise 1.9: Multiplication Rule

In producing screws, let:

- A mean "screw too slim",
- B mean "screw too short."

Let $P(A) = 0.1$ and let the conditional probability that a slim screw is also too short be $P(B|A) = 0.2$. What is the probability that a screw that we pick randomly from the lot produced will be both too slim and too short?

Solution

$$P(A \cap B) = P(A) P(B|A) = 0.1 \times 0.2 = 0.02 = 2\% \quad \blacksquare$$

Independent Events

If events A and B are such that

$$P(A \cap B) = P(A) P(B), \quad (1.19)$$

they are called **independent events**. Assuming $P(A) \neq 0, P(B) \neq 0$, we see from Eq. (1.16) - Eq. (1.18):

$$P(A|B) = P(A), \quad P(B|A) = P(B).$$

This means that the probability of A does not depend on the occurrence or nonoccurrence of B, and conversely. This justifies the term **independent**.

Independence of m Events

Similarly, m events A_1, \dots, A_m are called **independent** if:

$$P(A_1 \cap \dots \cap A_m) = P(A_1) \dots P(A_m) \quad (1.20)$$

as well as for every k different events $A_{j_1}, A_{j_2}, \dots, A_{j_k}$.

$$P(A_{j_1} \cap A_{j_2} \cap \dots \cap A_{j_k}) = P(A_{j_1}) P(A_{j_2}) \dots P(A_{j_k}) \quad (1.21)$$

where $k = 2, 3, \dots, m - 1$. Accordingly, three events A, B, C are independent if and only if

$$P(A \cap B) = P(A) P(B), \quad (1.22)$$

$$P(B \cap C) = P(B) P(C), \quad (1.23)$$

$$P(C \cap A) = P(C) P(A), \quad (1.24)$$

$$P(A \cap B \cap C) = P(A) P(B) P(C). \quad (1.25)$$

Sampling

Our next example has to do with randomly drawing objects, *one at a time*, from a given set of objects. This is called **sampling from a population**, and there are two ways of sampling, as follows.

■ **In sampling with replacement**, the object that was drawn at random is placed back to the given set and the set is mixed thoroughly. Then we draw the next object at random.

■ **In sampling without replacement** the object that was drawn is put aside.

Exercise 1.10: Sampling w/o Replacement

A box contains 10 screws, three (3) of which are defective. Two screws are drawn at random. Find the probability that neither of the two screws is defective.

Solution

We consider the events

- A First drawn screw non-defective,
- B Second drawn screw non-defective.

We can see:

$$P(A) = \frac{1}{10}$$

as 7 of the 10 screws are non-defective and we sample at random, so that each screw has the same probability ($\frac{1}{10}$) of being picked.

If we sample with replacement, the situation before the second drawing is the same as at the beginning, and $P(B) = \frac{7}{10}$. The events are independent, and the answer is

$$P(A \cap B) = P(A) P(B) = 0.7 \cdot 0.7 = 0.49\%.$$

If we sample without replacement, then $P(A) = \frac{7}{10}$, as before. If A has occurred, then there are 9 screws left in the box, 3 of which are defective.

Thus $P(B|A) = \frac{6}{9} = \frac{2}{3}$, therefore:

$$P(A \cap B) = \frac{7}{10} \cdot \frac{2}{3} = 47\% \quad \blacksquare$$

1.4 Permutations & Combinations

Permutations and combinations help in finding probabilities $P(A) = a/k$ by systematically counting the number a of points of which an event A consists.

where, k is the number of points of the sample space S .

The practical difficulty is that a may often be surprisingly large, so that actual counting becomes hopeless. For example, if in assembling some instrument you need 10 different screws in a certain order and you want to draw them randomly from a box¹⁸ the probability of obtaining them in the required order is only $1/3,628,800$ because there are exactly:

$$10! = 1 \cdot 2 \cdot 3 \cdot 4 \cdot 5 \cdot 6 \cdot 7 \cdot 8 \cdot 9 \cdot 10 = 3,628,800$$

orders in which they can be drawn. Similarly, in many other situations the numbers of orders, arrangements, etc. are often incredibly large.

¹⁸Of course, this goes without saying, there is nothing but screws in this imaginary box.

1.4.1 Permutations

¹⁹such as *elements* or *objects*. A **permutation** of given things¹⁹ is an arrangement of these things in a row in some order.

i.e., for three (3) letters a, b, c there are $3! = 1 \cdot 2 \cdot 3 = 6$ permutations: abc, acb, bca, cab, cba

Let's write this behaviour down as a theory:

Theory 1.7: Permutations

Different things

The number of permutations of n different things taken all at a time is

$$n! = 1 \cdot 2 \cdot 3 \cdot \dots \cdot n. \quad (1.26)$$

Classes of Equal Things

If n given things can be divided into c classes of alike things differing from class to class, then the number of permutations of these things taken all at a time is

$$\frac{n!}{n_1! n_2! \dots n_c!} \quad \text{where} \quad n_1 + n_2 + \dots + n_c = n, \quad (1.27)$$

where n_j is the number of things in the j^{th} class.

Permutation of n things taken k at a time

A permutation containing only k of the n given things. Two such permutations consisting of the same k elements, in a different order, are different, by definition.

i.e., there are 6 different permutations of the three letters a, b, c , taken two letters at a time, ab, ac, bc, ba, ca, cb .

Permutation of n things taken k at a time with repetitions

An arrangement obtained by putting any given thing in the first position, any given thing, including a repetition of the one just used, in the second, and continuing until k positions are filled.

i.e., there are $3^2 = 9$ different such permutations of a, b, c taken 2 letters at a time, namely, the preceding 6 permutations and aa, bb, cc .

Theory 1.8: Permutations

The number of different permutations of n different things taken k at a time **without repetitions** is

$$n(n-1)(n-2)\cdots(n-k+1) = \frac{n!}{(n-k)!}, \quad (1.28)$$

and **with repetitions** is,

$$n^k. \quad (1.29)$$

Exercise 1.11: An Encrypted Message

In an encrypted message the letters are arranged in groups of five (5) letters, called words. Knowing the letter can be repeated, we see that the number of different such words is

$$26^5 = 11,881,376 \quad \blacksquare$$

For the case of different such words containing each letter no more than once is

$$\frac{26!}{(26-5)!} = 26 \cdot 25 \cdot 24 \cdot 23 \cdot 22 = 7,893,600 \quad \blacksquare$$

1.4.2 Combinations

In a permutation, the **order of the selected things is essential**. In contrast, a **combination** of a given things means any selection of one or more things **without regard to order**. There are two (2) kinds of combinations, as follows:

1. The number of **combinations of n different things, taken k at a time, without repetitions** is the number of sets that can be made up from the n given things, each set containing k different things and no two (2) sets containing exactly the same k things.
2. The number of **combinations of n different things, taken k at a time, with repetitions** is the number of sets that can be made up of k things chosen from the given n things, each being used as often as desired.

i.e., there are three (3) combinations of the three (3) letters a, b, c , taken two (2) letters at a time, without repetitions, namely, ab, ac, bc , and six such combinations with repetitions, namely, ab, ac, bc, ca, bb, cc .

Theory 1.9: Combinations

The number of different combinations of n different things taken, k at a time, **without repetitions**, is:

$$\binom{n}{k} = \frac{n!}{k!(n-k)!} = \frac{n(n-1) \cdots (n-k+1)}{1 \cdot 2 \cdots k}, \quad (1.30)$$

and the number of those combinations **with repetitions** is:

$$\binom{n+k-1}{k}. \quad (1.31)$$

Exercise 1.12: Sampling Light-bulbs

The number of samples of five (5) light-bulbs that can be selected from a lot of 500 bulbs is

$$\binom{500}{5} = \frac{500!}{5!495!} = \frac{500 \cdot 499 \cdot 498 \cdot 497 \cdot 476}{1 \cdot 2 \cdot 3 \cdot 4 \cdot 5} = 255,244,687,600 \quad \blacksquare$$

1.4.3 Factorial Function

²⁰This is done by convention. An intuitive way to look at it is $n!$ counts the number of ways to arrange n distinct objects in a line, and there is only one way to arrange nothing.

In Eq. (1.26)-Eq. (1.31) the **factorial function** is relatively straightforward. By definition²⁰,

$$0! = 1.$$

Values may be computed recursively from given values by

$$(n+1)! = (n+1)n!.$$

For large n the function is very large and hard to keep track of. A convenient approximation for large n is the **Stirling formula**, defined as:

$$n! \sim \sqrt{2\pi n} \left(\frac{n}{e}\right)^n \quad \text{where} \quad e = 2.718 \cdots \quad (1.32)$$

where \sim is read asymptotically equal²¹ and means that the ratio of the two sides of Eq. (1.32) approaches 1 as n approaches infinity.

²¹it means the percentage difference between the vertical distances between points on the two graphs approaches 0.

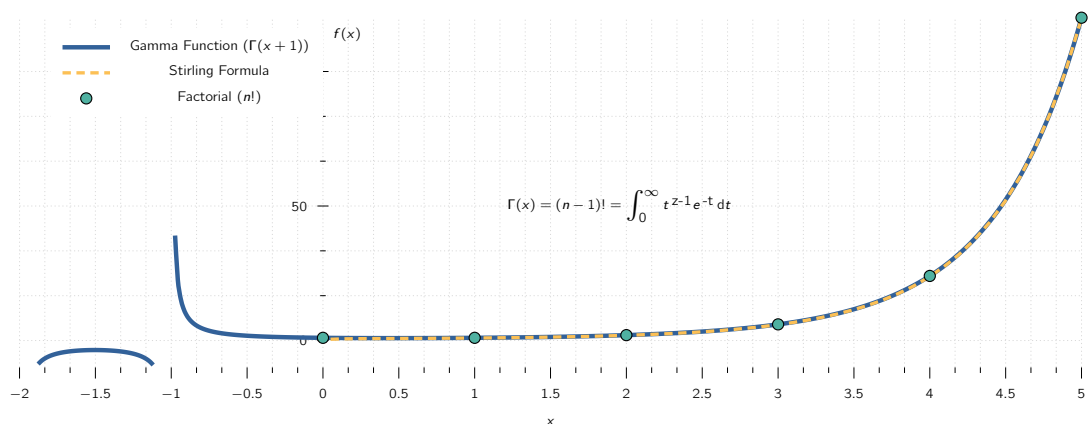


Figure 1.3: A visual comparison of the Stirling formula and the actual values of the factorial function.

1.4.4 Binomial Coefficients

The **binomial coefficients** are defined by the following formula:

$$\binom{a}{k} = \frac{(a)(a-1)(a-2)\cdots(a-k+1)}{k!} \quad \text{where} \quad (k \geq 0, \text{ integer}) \quad (1.33)$$

The numerator has k factors. Furthermore, we define

$$\binom{a}{0} = 1, \quad \text{in particular,} \quad \binom{0}{0} = 1.$$

For integer $a = n$ we obtain from Eq. (1.33):

$$\binom{n}{k} = \binom{n}{n-k} \quad (n \geq 0 \quad \text{and} \quad 0 \leq k \leq n).$$

Binomial coefficients may be computed recursively, because

$$\binom{a}{k} + \binom{a}{k+1} = \binom{a+1}{k+1} \quad (k \geq 0, \text{ integer}).$$

Formula Eq. (1.33) also gives:

$$\binom{-m}{k} = (-1)^k \binom{m+k-1}{k} \quad \text{where} \quad k \geq 0, \text{ integer} \quad \text{and} \quad m > 0.$$

There are two (2) important relations worth mentioning:

$$\sum_{s=0}^{n-1} \binom{k+s}{k} = \binom{n+k}{k+1} \quad (k \geq 0 \quad \text{and} \quad n \geq 1)$$

and

$$\sum_{k=0}^r \binom{p}{k} \binom{q}{r-k} = \binom{p+q}{r} \quad (r \geq 0, \text{ integer}).$$

1.5 Random Variables and Probability Distributions

²²Remember we did a histogram and a stem-and-leaf plot.

In the beginning of this chapter we considered frequency distributions of data²². These distributions show the **absolute** or **relative** frequency of the data values.

²³or **stochastic variable** if you want to be pedantic.

Similarly, a **probability distribution** or, a **distribution**, shows the probabilities of events in an experiment. The quantity we observe in an experiment will be denoted by X and called a random variable²³ as the value it will assume in the next trial depends on the **stochastic process**

i.e., if you roll a die, you get one of the numbers from 1 to 6, but you don't know which one will show up next. An example would be, $X = \text{Number a die turns up}$, which is a random variable.

²⁴cars on a road, defective parts in a production, tosses until a die shows the first six (6) .

If we count²⁴, we have a **discrete random variable and distribution**. If we **measure** (electric voltage, rainfall, hardness of steel), we have a **continuous random variable and distribution**. For both cases (discrete, discontinuous), the distribution of X is determined by the **distribution function**:

$$F(x) = P(X \leq x) \quad (1.34)$$

This is the probability that in a trial, X will assume any value not exceeding x .

The terminology is unfortunately **NOT** uniform across the field as $F(x)$ is sometimes also called the **cumulative distribution function**.

For Eq. (1.34) to make sense in both the discrete and the continuous case we formulate conditions as follows.

Theory 1.10: Random Variable

A **random variable** X is a function defined on the sample space S of an experiment. Its values are real numbers. For every number a the probability:

$$P(X = a),$$

with which X assumes a is defined. Similarly, for any interval I , the probability

$$P(X \in I),$$

with which X assumes any value in I is defined²⁵.

²⁵Although this definition is very general, in practice only a very small number of distributions will occur over and over again in applications.

From Eq. (1.34) we can define the fundamental formula for the probability corresponding to an interval $a < x \leq b$:

$$P(a < X \leq b) = F(b) - F(a). \quad (1.35)$$

This follows because $X \leq a$ (X assumes any value **NOT** exceeding a) and $a < X \leq b$ (X assumes any value in the interval $a < x \leq b$) are **mutually exclusive** events, so based on Eq. (1.34):

$$\begin{aligned} F(b) &= P(X \leq b) = P(X \leq a) + P(a < X \leq b) \\ &= F(a) + P(a < X \leq b) \end{aligned}$$

and subtraction of $F(a)$ on both sides gives Eq. (1.35).

1.5.1 Discrete Random Variables and Distributions

By definition, a random variable X and its distribution are **discrete** if X assumes only **finitely** many or at most countably many values x_1, x_2, x_3, \dots , called the **possible values** of X , with positive probabilities,

$$p_1 = P(X = x_1), p_2 = P(X = x_2), p_3 = P(X = x_3), \dots$$

whereas the probability $P(X \in I)$ is zero for any interval I containing no possible value. Clearly, the discrete distribution of X is also determined by the **probability function** $f(x)$ of X , defined by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} p_j & \text{if } x = x_j \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad \text{where } j = 1, 2, \dots, \quad (1.36)$$

From this we get the values of the **distribution function** $F(x)$ by taking sums,

$$F(x) = \sum_{x_j \leq x} f(x_j) = \sum_{x_j \leq x} p_j \quad (1.37)$$

where for any given x we sum all the probabilities p_j for which x_j is smaller than or equal to that of x . This is a **step function** with upward jumps of size p_j at the possible values x_j of X and constant in between. The two (2) useful formulas for discrete distributions are readily obtained as follows. For the probability corresponding to intervals we have from Eq. (1.35) and Eq. (1.37):

$$P(a < X \leq b) = F(b) - F(a) = \sum_{a < x_j \leq b} p_j \quad (1.38)$$

This is the sum of all probabilities p_j for which x_j satisfies $a < x_j \leq b$ ²⁶. From this and $P(S) = 1$ we obtain the following formula.

²⁶Be careful about $<$ and \leq as the former means it is **NOT** included and the latter means it is.

$$\sum_j p_j = 1 \quad (\text{sum of all probabilities}). \quad (1.39)$$

Exercise 1.13: Waiting Time Problem

In tossing a fair coin, let X be the Number of trials until the first head appears. Then, by independence of events we get (where H is heads, and T is tails):

$$\begin{aligned} P(X=1) &= P(H) = \frac{1}{2} \\ P(X=2) &= P(TH) = \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{4} \\ P(X=3) &= P(TTH) = \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{8} \end{aligned}$$

and in general, $P(X=n) = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n$, $n = 1, 2, 3, \dots$ which when all possible event are summed up will always give 1.

1.5.2 Continuous Random Variables and Distributions

²⁷defectives in a production, days of sunshine in Kufstein, customers in a line, etc.

²⁸we write v as a toss-away variable because x is needed as the upper limit of the integral.

Discrete random variables appear in experiments in which we count²⁷. Continuous random variables appear in experiments in which we **measure** (lengths of screws, voltage in a power line, etc.). By definition, a random variable X and its distribution are of *continuous type* or, briefly, **continuous**, if its distribution function $F(x)$, defined in Eq. (1.34), can be given by an integral²⁸:

$$F(x) = \int_{-\infty}^x f(v) dv \quad (1.40)$$

whose integrand $f(x)$, called the **density** of the distribution, is **non-negative**, and is continuous, perhaps except for finitely many x -values. Differentiation gives the relation of f to F as

$$f(x) = F'(x) \quad (1.41)$$

for every x at which $f(x)$ is continuous.

From Eq. (1.35) and Eq. (1.40) we obtain the very important formula for the probability corresponding to an interval²⁹:

²⁹This is an analog of Eq. (1.38)

$$P(a < X \leq b) = F(b) - F(a) = \int_a^b f(v) dv \quad (1.42)$$

Which can be seen visually in **Fig. 1.4**. From Eq. (1.40) and $P(S) = 1$ we also have the analogue of Eq. (1.39):

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(v) dv = 1. \quad (1.43)$$

Continuous random variables are **simpler than discrete ones** with respect to intervals as, in the continuous case the four probabilities corresponding to $a < X \leq b$, $a < X < b$, $a \leq X \leq b$,

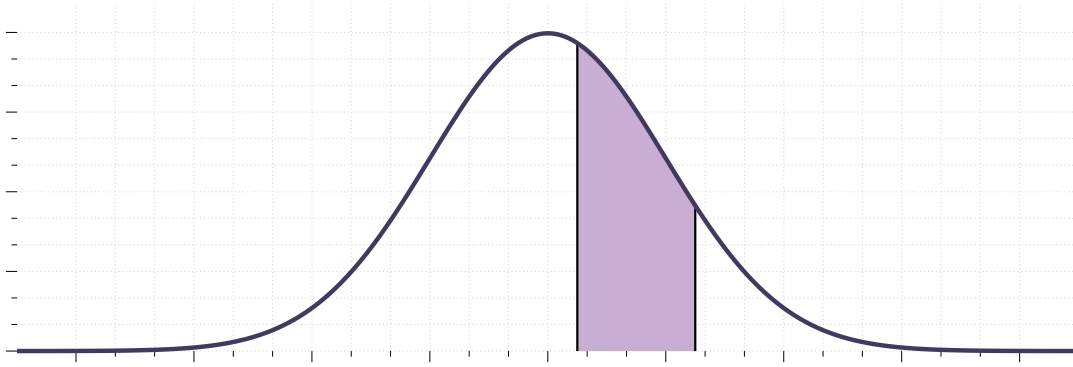


Figure 1.4: A visual representation of the Eq. (1.42).

and $a \leq X \leq b$ with any fixed a and b ($b > a$) are all the same.

The next example illustrates notations and typical applications of our present formulas.

Exercise 1.14: Continuous Distribution

Let X have the density function:

$$f(x) = 0.75(1 - x^2) \quad \text{if} \quad -1 \leq x \leq 1,$$

and zero otherwise. Find:

1. The distribution function.
2. Find the probabilities $P\left(-\frac{1}{2} \leq X \leq \frac{1}{2}\right)$ and $P\left(\frac{1}{2} \leq X \leq 2\right)$
3. Find x such that $P(X \leq x) = 0.95$.

Solution

From Eq. (1.40), we obtain $F(x) = 0$ if $x \leq -1$,

$$F(x) = 0.75 \int_{-1}^x (1 - v^2) dv = 0.5 + 0.75x - 0.25x^3 \quad \text{if} \quad -1 < x \leq 1,$$

and $F(x) = 1$ if $x > 1$. From this and Eq. (1.42) we get:

$$P\left(-\frac{1}{2} \leq X \leq \frac{1}{2}\right) = F\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) - F\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right) = 0.75 \int_{-1/2}^{1/2} (1 - v^2) dv = 68.75\%$$

because $P\left(-\frac{1}{2} \leq X \leq \frac{1}{2}\right) = P\left(-\frac{1}{2} < X \leq \frac{1}{2}\right)$ for a continuous distribution we can write:

$$P\left(\frac{1}{4} \leq X \leq 2\right) = F(2) - F\left(\frac{1}{4}\right) = 0.75 \int_{1/4}^1 (1 - v^2) dv = 31.64\%.$$

Note that the upper limit of integration is 1, not 2. Finally,

$$P(X \leq x) = F(x) = 0.5 + 0.75x - 0.25x^2 = 0.95.$$

Algebraic simplification gives $3x - x^3 = 1.8$. A solution is $x = 0.73$, approximately ■

1.6 Mean and Variance of a Distribution

The mean μ and variance σ^2 of a random variable X and of its distribution are the theoretical counterparts of the mean \bar{x} and variance s^2 of a frequency distribution and serve a similar purpose.

The mean characterises the central location and the variance the spread (the variability) of the distribution. The **mean** μ is defined by:

$$(a) \quad \mu = \sum_j x_j f(x_j) \quad (\text{Discrete distribution}) \quad (1.44a)$$

$$(b) \quad \mu = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x f(x) dx \quad (\text{Continuous distribution}) \quad (1.44b)$$

and the **variance** σ^2 by:

$$(a) \quad \sigma^2 = \sum_j (x_j - \mu)^2 f(x_j) \quad (\text{Discrete distribution}) \quad (1.45a)$$

$$(b) \quad \sigma^2 = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} (x - \mu)^2 f(x) dx \quad (\text{Continuous distribution}) \quad (1.45b)$$

³⁰Sometimes it is known as $\text{Var}(x)$

σ (the positive square root of σ^2) is called the standard deviation³⁰ of X and its distribution. f is the probability function or the density, respectively, in (a) and (b).

The mean μ is also denoted by $E(X)$ and is called the **expectation of** X because it gives the average value of X to be expected in many trials.

Quantities such as μ and σ^2 that measure certain properties of a distribution are called **parameters**. μ and σ^2 are the two (2) most important ones.

³¹except for a discrete distribution with only one possible value.

From Eq. (1.45a) and Eq. (1.45b), we see that³¹:

$$\sigma^2 > 0$$

³²and finite.

We assume that μ and σ^2 exist³², as is the case for practically all distributions that are useful in applications.

Exercise 1.15: Mean and Variance

The random variable X , *Number of heads in a single toss of a fair coin*, has the possible values $X = 0$ and $X = 1$ with probabilities $P(X = 0) = \frac{1}{2}$ and $P(X = 1) = \frac{1}{2}$. From Eq. (1.44a) we thus obtain the mean:

$$\mu = 0 \cdot \frac{1}{2} + 1 \cdot \frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{2}.$$

and Eq. (1.45a) gives the variance:

$$\sigma^2 = (0 - \frac{1}{2})^2 \cdot \frac{1}{2} + (1 - \frac{1}{2})^2 \cdot \frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{4} \quad \blacksquare$$

Symmetry

We can obtain the mean μ without calculation if a distribution is symmetric. Indeed, we can write:

Theory 1.11: Mean of a Symmetric Distribution

If a distribution is **symmetric** with respect to $x = c$, that is,

$$f(c - x) = f(c + x)$$

then $\mu = c$.

Transformation of Mean and Variance

Given a random variable X with mean μ and variance σ^2 , we want to calculate the mean and variance of $X^* = a_1 + a_2X$, where a_1 and a_2 are given constants.

This problem is important in statistics, where it often appears.

Theory 1.12: Transformation of Mean and Variance

If a random variable X has mean μ and variance σ^2 , then the random variable:

$$X^* = a_1 + a_2X \quad \text{where} \quad a_2 > 0$$

has the mean μ^* and variance σ^{*2} , where

$$\mu^* = a_1 + a_2\mu \quad \text{and} \quad \sigma^{*2} = a_2^2\sigma^2.$$

In particular, the **standardised random variable** Z corresponding to X , given by:

$$Z = \frac{X - \mu}{\sigma}$$

has the mean 0 and the variance 1.

Expectation & Moments

If we recall, Eq. (1.44a) and Eq. (1.44b) define the mean of X^{33} , written $\mu = E(X)$. More generally, if $g(x)$ is **non-constant** and continuous for all x , then $g(X)$ is a random variable. Therefore its **mathematical expectation** or, briefly, its expectation $E(g(X))$ is the value of $g(X)$ to be expected on the average, defined by:

³³the value of X to be expected on the average

$$E(g(X)) = \sum_j g(x_j) f(x_j) \quad \text{or} \quad E(g(X)) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} g(x) f(x) dx$$

In the formula on the Left Hand Side (LHS), f is the probability function of the discrete random variable X . In the formula on the RHS, f is the density of the continuous random variable X . Important special cases are the k^{th} of X (where $k = 1, 2, \dots$)

$$E(X^k) = \sum_j x_j^k f(x_j) \quad \text{or} \quad \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x^k f(x) dx$$

and the k^{th} of X ($k = 1, 2, \dots$)

$$E([X - \mu]^k) = \sum_j (x_j - \mu)^k f(x_j) \quad \text{or} \quad \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} (x - \mu)^k f(x) dx.$$

This includes the first moment, the **mean** of X

$$\mu = E(X) \quad \text{where} \quad k = 1 \quad (1.46)$$

It also includes the second central moment, the **variance** of X

$$\sigma^2 = E([X - \mu]^2) \quad \text{where} \quad k = 2. \quad (1.47)$$

1.7 Binomial, Poisson, and Hyper-geometric Distributions

These are the three (3) most important **discrete** distributions, with numerous applications therefore are worth of a bit of a detailed look.

Of course these are not the only distributions present. There are as many distributions as there are problems with some distributions used in wide variety of fields (Gaussian) whereas some are used only in a very narrow field (Nakagami).

Binomial Distribution

The **binomial distribution** occurs in problems involving of chance³⁴.

What we are interested is in the number of times an event A occurs in n **independent** trials. In each trial, the event A has the same probability $P(A) = p$. Then in a trial, A will **NOT** occur with probability $q = 1 - p$. In n trials the random variable that interests us is:

$$X = \text{Number of times the event } A \text{ occurs in } n \text{ trials.} \quad (1.48)$$

X can assume the values $0, 1, \dots, n$, and we want to determine the corresponding probabilities. Now $X = x$ means that A occurs in x trials and in $n - x$ trials it does not occur. We can write this down as follows:

$$\underbrace{A \ A \ \dots \ A}_{x \text{ times}} \quad \text{and} \quad \underbrace{B \ B \ \dots \ B}_{n - x \text{ times}} \quad (1.49)$$

Here $B = A^c$ is the complement of A , meaning that A does not occur. We now use the assumption that the trials are independent³⁵. Hence Eq. (1.49) has the probability:

$$\underbrace{p \ p \ \dots \ p}_{x \text{ times}} \cdot \underbrace{q \ q \ \dots \ q}_{n - x \text{ times}} = p^x q^{n-x} \quad (1.50)$$

Now Eq. (1.49) is just one order of arranging x A 's and $n - x$ B 's. We will now calculate the number of permutations of n things³⁶ consisting of two (2) classes;

1. class 1 containing the $n_1 = x$ A 's
2. class 2 containing the $n - n_1 = n - x$ B 's

This number is:

$$\frac{n!}{x!(n - x)!} = \binom{n}{x}. \quad (1.51)$$

³⁴rolling a dice, quality inspection (e.g., counting of the number of defectives), opinion plots (counting number of employees favouring certain schedule changes, etc.), medicine (e.g., recording the number of patterns who covered on a new medication)

³⁵e.g., they do **NOT** influence each other

³⁶the n outcomes of the n trials

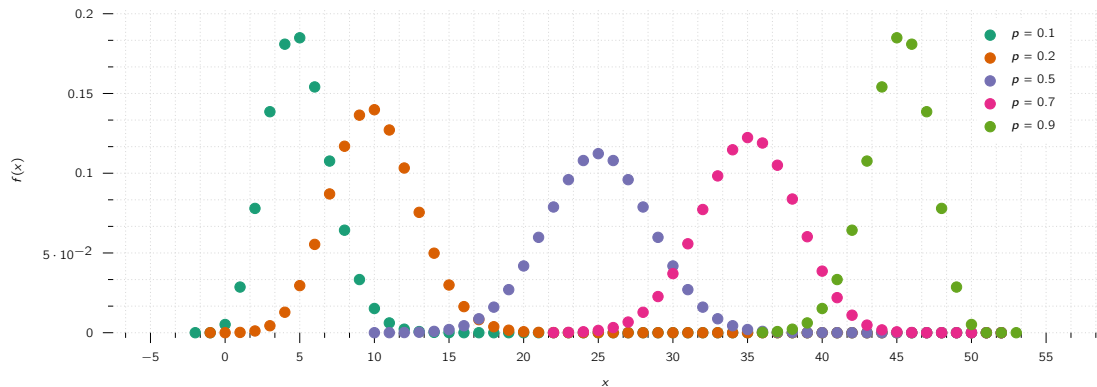


Figure 1.5: Binomial distribution with different values of probability with a sample size of 50.

Accordingly, Eq. (1.50), multiplied by this binomial coefficient, gives the probability $P(X = x)$ of $X = x$, that is, of obtaining A precisely x times in n trials. Hence X has the probability function:

$$f(x) = \binom{n}{x} p^x q^{n-x} \quad (x = 0, 1, \dots, n) \quad (1.52)$$

and $f(x) = 0$ otherwise. The distribution of X with probability function (2) is called the **binomial distribution** or *Bernoulli distribution*. The occurrence of A is called success³⁷ and the non-occurrence of A is called *failure*.

The mean and variance of the binomial distribution is:

$$\mu = np \quad \text{and} \quad \sigma^2 = npq$$

For the *symmetric* case of equal chance of success and failure ($p = q = \frac{1}{2}$) this gives the mean $n/2$, the variance $n/4$, and the probability function

$$f(x) = \binom{n}{x} \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n \quad (x = 0, 1, \dots, n).$$

Exercise 1.16: Binomial Distribution

Calculate the probability of obtaining at least two (2) "six" in rolling a fair die 4 times.

Solution

$p = P(A) = P(\text{six}) = \frac{1}{6}$, $q = \frac{5}{6}$, $n = 4$. The event "At least two (2) "six" occurs if we obtain 2 or 3 or 4 "six" Hence the answer is:

$$\begin{aligned} P &= f(2) + f(3) + f(4) = \binom{4}{2} \left(\frac{1}{6}\right)^2 \left(\frac{5}{6}\right)^2 + \binom{4}{3} \left(\frac{1}{6}\right)^3 \left(\frac{5}{6}\right) + \binom{4}{4} \left(\frac{1}{6}\right)^4 \\ &= \frac{1}{6^4} (6 \cdot 25 + 4 \cdot 5 + 1) = \frac{171}{1296} = 13.2\%. \end{aligned}$$

Poisson Distribution

The discrete distribution with infinitely many possible values and probability function:

³⁷regardless of what it actually is; it may mean that you miss your plane or lose your watch

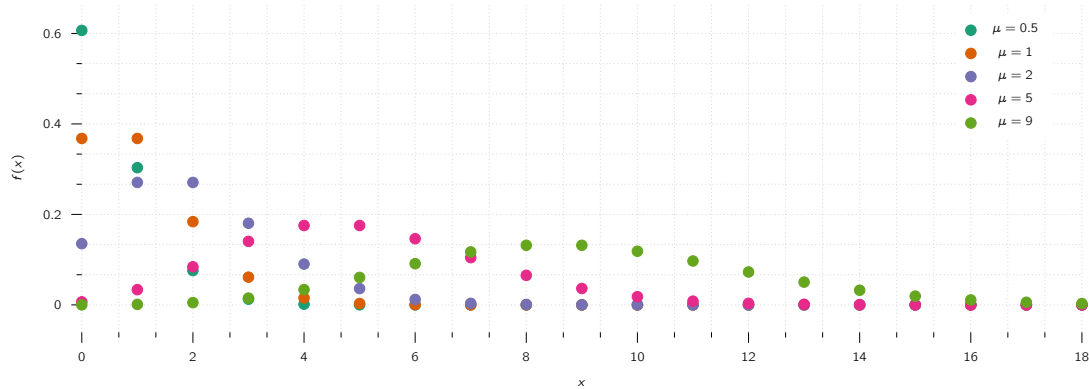


Figure 1.6: The Poisson distribution with different mean (μ) values.

$$f(x) = \frac{\mu^x}{x!} e^{-\mu} \quad \text{where} \quad x = 0, 1, \dots \quad (1.53)$$

is called the **Poisson distribution**, named after *S. D. Poisson*. **Fig. 1.6** shows Eq. (1.53) for some values of μ ³⁸.

³⁸While μ is used here, some textbook use λ

It can be proved that this distribution is obtained as a limiting case of the binomial distribution, if we let $p \rightarrow 0$ and $n \rightarrow \infty$ so that the mean $\mu = np$ approaches a finite value. The Poisson distribution has the mean μ and the variance:

$$\sigma^2 = \mu. \quad (1.54)$$

Fig. 1.6 gives the impression that, with increasing mean, the spread of the distribution increases, thereby illustrating formula Eq. (1.54), and that the distribution becomes more and more symmetric.³⁹

³⁹approximately

Exercise 1.17: Poisson Distribution

If the probability of producing a defective screw is $p = 0.01$, what is the probability that a lot of 100 screws will contain more than 2 defectives?

Solution

The complementary event is A^c . No more than 2 defectives. For its probability we get, from the binomial distribution with mean $\mu = np = 1$, the value.

$$P(A^c) = \binom{100}{0} 0.99^{100} + \binom{100}{1} 0.01 \cdot 0.99^{100} + \binom{100}{2} 0.01^2 \cdot 0.99^{100}.$$

Since p is very small, we can approximate this by the much more convenient Poisson distribution with mean $\mu = np = 100 \cdot 0.01 = 1$, obtaining.

$$P(A^c) = e^{-1} \left(1 + 1 + \frac{1}{2} \right) = 91.97\%.$$

Thus $P(A) = 8.03\%$. Show that the binomial distribution gives $P(A) = 7.94\%$, so that the Poisson approximation is quite good ■

1.7.1 Sampling with Replacement

⁴⁰put it back to the given set and mix.

This means that we draw things from a given set one by one, and after each trial we replace the thing drawn⁴⁰ before we draw the next thing. This guarantees **independence of trials** and leads to the **binomial distribution**. Indeed, if a box contains N things, for example, screws, M of which are defective, the probability of drawing a defective screw in a trial is $p = M/N$. Hence the probability of drawing a nondefective screw is $q = 1 - p = 1 - M/N$, and Eq. (1.52) gives the probability of drawing x defectives in n trials in the form:

$$f(x) = \binom{n}{x} \left(\frac{M}{N}\right)^x \left(1 - \frac{M}{N}\right)^{n-x} \quad (x = 0, 1, \dots, n). \quad (1.55)$$

1.7.2 Sampling without Replacement: Hyper-geometric Distribution

Sampling without replacement means that we return no screw to the box. Then we no longer have independence of trials, and instead of Eq. (1.55) the probability of drawing x defectives in n trials is:

$$f(x) = \frac{\binom{M}{x} \binom{N-M}{n-x}}{\binom{N}{n}} \quad \text{where} \quad x = 1, 2, \dots, n. \quad (1.56)$$

⁴¹because its moment generating function can be expressed by the hypergeometric function, which is a fact only useful to write it in a margin.

The distribution with this probability function is called the hyper-geometric distribution⁴¹.

The hypergeometric distribution has the mean and the variance:

$$\mu = n \frac{M}{N} \quad \text{and} \quad \sigma^2 = \frac{nM(N-M)(N-n)}{N^2(N-1)}.$$

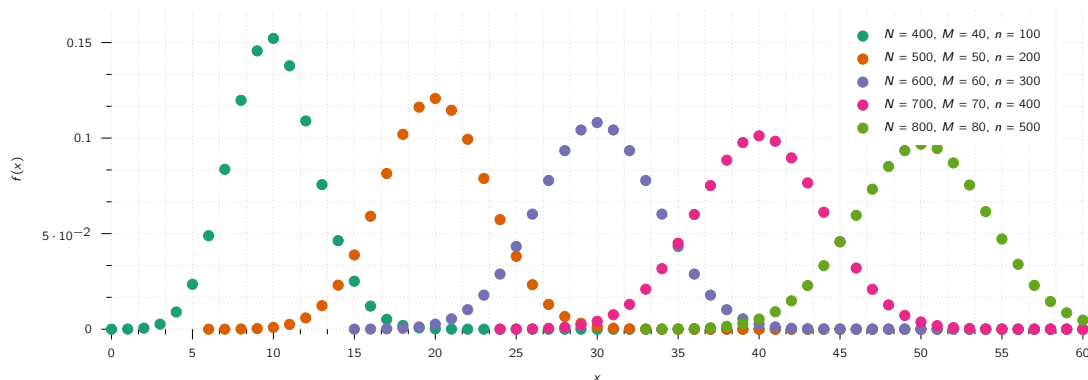


Figure 1.7: The probability density distribution of hyper-geometric distribution with different parameters.

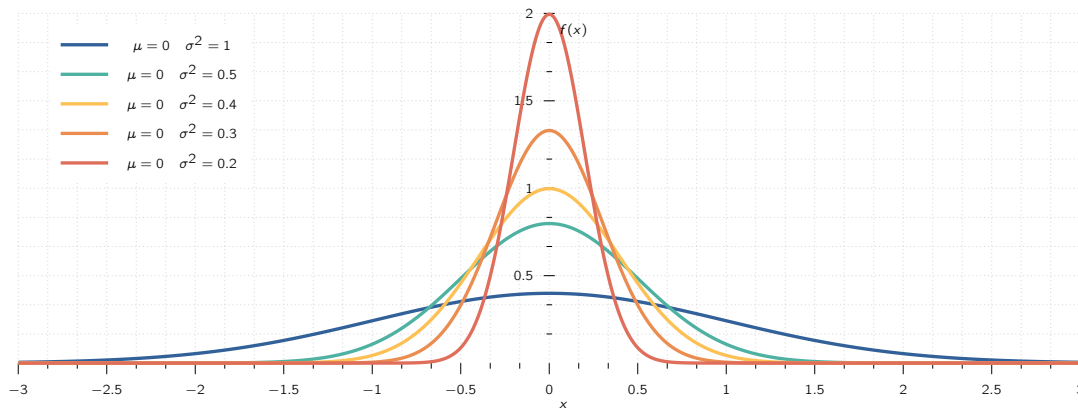


Figure 1.8: The poster child of probability and statistics, the normal distribution.

1.8 Normal Distribution

Turning from discrete to continuous distributions, in this section we discuss the normal distribution. This is the most important continuous distribution because in applications many random variables are normal random variables⁴² or they are approximately normal or can be transformed into normal random variables in a relatively simple fashion. Furthermore, the normal distribution is a useful approximation of more complicated distributions, and it also occurs in the proofs of various statistical tests.

⁴²that is, they have a normal distribution.

The **normal distribution** or *Gauss distribution* is defined as the distribution with the density:

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\sigma\sqrt{2\pi}} \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{x-\mu}{\sigma}\right)^2\right) \quad (1.57)$$

where \exp is the exponential function with base $e = 2.718\ldots$. This is simpler than it may at first look. $f(x)$ has these features (see also **Fig. 1.8**).

1. μ is the mean, and σ the standard deviation.
2. $1/(\sigma\sqrt{2\pi})$ is a constant factor that makes the area under the curve of $f(x)$ from $-\infty$ to ∞ equal to 1, as it must be⁴³.
3. The curve of $f(x)$ is symmetric with respect to $x = \mu$ because the exponent is **quadratic**. Hence for $\mu = 0$ it is symmetric with respect to the y -axis $x = 0$ ⁴⁴.
4. The exponential function in Eq. (1.57) goes to zero very fast—the faster the smaller the standard deviation σ is, as it should be, as seen in **Fig. 1.8**.

⁴³Having a probability higher than 1 does **NOT** make sense

⁴⁴This distribution is also known as bell-shaped curves.

1.8.1 Distribution Function

From Eq. (1.55) and Eq. (1.57) we see that the normal distribution has the **distribution function** of the following form:

$$F(x) = \frac{1}{\sigma\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^x \exp\left[-\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{v-\mu}{\sigma}\right)^2\right] dv. \quad (1.58)$$

Here we needed x as the upper limit of integration and wrote v (instead of x) in the integrand.

For the corresponding **standardised normal distribution** with mean 0 and standard deviation 1 we denote $F(x)$ by $\Phi(z)$. Then we simply have from Eq. (1.58).

$$\Phi(z) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^z e^{-u^2/2} du. \quad (1.59)$$

This integral cannot be integrated by one of the methods of calculus.

But this is no serious handicap because its values can be obtained from standardised tables. These values are needed in working with the normal distribution. The curve of $\Phi(z)$ is S-shaped. It increases monotone from 0 to 1 and intersects the vertical axis at $\frac{1}{2}$, as shown in Fig. 1.9.

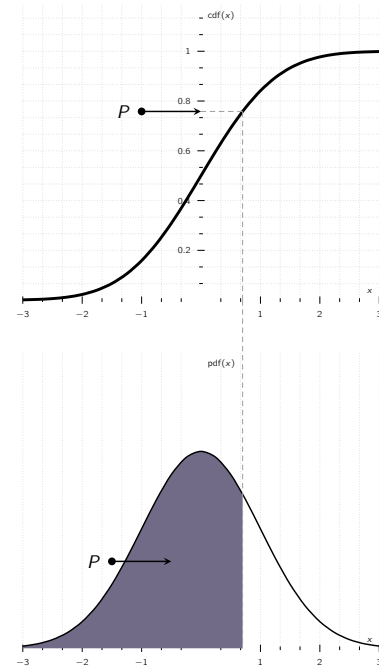


Figure 1.9: A visual representation between the relationship of PDF and CDF.

Theory 1.13: Relationship between PDF and CDF

The distribution function $F(x)$ of the normal distribution with any μ and σ is related to the standardised distribution function $\Phi(z)$ in Eq. (1.59) by the formula

$$F(x) = \Phi\left(\frac{x-\mu}{\sigma}\right).$$

Theory 1.14: Normal Probabilities for Intervals

The probability a normal random variable X with mean μ and standard deviation σ assume any value in an interval $a < x \leq b$ is:

$$P(a < X \leq b) = F(b) - F(a) = \Phi\left(\frac{b-\mu}{\sigma}\right) - \Phi\left(\frac{a-\mu}{\sigma}\right).$$

1.8.2 Numeric Values

In practical work with the normal distribution it is good to remember that about 67% of all values of X to be observed will be between $\mu \pm \sigma$, about 95% between $\mu \pm 2\sigma$, and practically all between

the **three-sigma limits** $\mu \pm 3\sigma$:

$$P(\mu - \sigma < X \leq \mu + \sigma) \approx 68\% \quad (1.60a)$$

$$P(\mu - 2\sigma < X \leq \mu + 2\sigma) \approx 95.5\% \quad (1.60b)$$

$$P(\mu - 3\sigma < X \leq \mu + 3\sigma) \approx 99.7\%. \quad (1.60c)$$

The aforementioned formulas show that a value deviating from μ by more than σ , 2σ , or 3σ will occur in one of about 3, 20, and 300 trials, respectively.

In tests⁴⁵, we shall ask, conversely, for the intervals that correspond to certain given probabilities; practically most important use the probabilities of 95%, 99%, and 99.9%. For these, the answers are $\mu \pm 2\sigma$, $\mu \pm 2.6\sigma$, and $\mu \pm 3.3\sigma$, respectively.

⁴⁵Which we shall cover in Chapter 2.

More precisely,

$$P(\mu - 1.96\sigma < X \leq \mu + 1.96\sigma) \approx 95\% \quad (1.61a)$$

$$P(\mu - 2.58\sigma < X \leq \mu + 2.58\sigma) \approx 99\% \quad (1.61b)$$

$$P(\mu - 3.29\sigma < X \leq \mu + 3.29\sigma) \approx 99.9\%. \quad (1.61c)$$

1.8.3 Normal Approximation of the Binomial Distribution

The probability function of the binomial distribution, as a reminder, is:

$$f(x) = \binom{n}{x} p^x q^{n-x} \quad (x = 0, 1, \dots, n). \quad (1.62)$$

If n is large, the binomial coefficients and powers become very inconvenient. It is of great practical⁴⁶ importance that, in this case, the normal distribution provides a good approximation of the binomial distribution, according to the following theorem, one of the most important theorems in all probability theory.

⁴⁶and theoretical

Theory 1.15: Limit Theorem of De Moivre and Laplace

For large n ,

$$f(x) \sim f^*(x) \quad \text{where} \quad x = 0, 1, \dots, n$$

Here f is given by Eq. (1.62). The function

$$f^*(\cdot) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\sqrt{npq}}} \exp\left(-\frac{z^2}{2}\right), \quad \text{and} \quad z = \frac{x - np}{\sqrt{npq}}$$

is the density of the normal distribution with mean $\mu = np$ and variance $\sigma^2 = npq$ (the mean and variance of the binomial distribution). Furthermore, for any nonnegative integers a and b ($> a$):

$$P(a \leq X \leq b) = \sum_{x=a}^b \binom{n}{x} p^x q^{n-x} \sim \Phi(\beta) - \Phi(\alpha)$$

where,

$$\alpha = \frac{a - np - 0.5}{\sqrt{npq}} \quad \text{and} \quad \beta = \frac{b - np + 0.5}{\sqrt{npq}}$$

1.9 Distribution of Several Random Variables

Distributions of two (2) or more random variables are of interest for two (2) reasons:

1. They occur in experiments in which we observe several random variables, for example, carbon content X and hardness Y of steel, amount of fertiliser X and yield of corn Y , height X_1 , weight X_2 , and blood pressure X_3 of persons, and so on.
2. They will be needed in the mathematical justification of the methods of statistics in Chapter 2.

In this section we consider two (2) random variables X and Y or, as we also say, a **two-dimensional random variable** (X, Y) . For (X, Y) the outcome of a trial is a pair of numbers $X = x$, $Y = y$, briefly $(X, Y) = (x, y)$, which we can plot as a point in the XY -plane.

The **two-dimensional probability distribution** of the random variable (X, Y) is given by the **distribution function**

$$F(x, y) = P(X \leq x, Y \leq y). \quad (1.63)$$

This is the probability that in a trial, X will assume any value not greater than x and in the same trial, Y will assume any value not greater than y . $F(x, y)$ determines the probability distribution **uniquely**, because extending the analogy we developed previously, $P(a < X \leq b) = F(b) - F(a)$, we now have for a rectangle defined using the following equation:

$$P(a_1 < X \leq b_1, a_2 < Y \leq b_2) = F(b_1, b_2) - F(a_1, b_2) - F(b_1, a_2) + F(a_1, a_2). \quad (1.64)$$

As before, in the two-dimensional case we shall also have **discrete** and **continuous** random variables and distributions.

1.9.1 Discrete Two-Dimensional Distribution

In analogy to the case of a single random variable, we call (X, Y) and its distribution **discrete** if (X, Y) can assume only finitely many or at most countably infinitely many pairs of values (x_1, y_1) , $(x_2, y_2), \dots$ with positive probabilities, whereas the probability for any domain containing none of those values of (X, Y) is zero.

Let (x_i, y_i) be any of those values and let $P(X = x_i, Y = y_j) = p_{ij}$ (where we admit that p_{ij} may be 0 for certain pairs of subscripts i). Then we define the **probability function** $f(x, y)$ of (X, Y) by:

$$f(x, y) = p_{ij} \quad \text{if} \quad x = x_i, y = y_j \quad \text{and} \quad f(x, y) = 0 \quad \text{otherwise;}$$

where, $i = 1, 2, \dots$ and $j = 1, 2, \dots$ independently. In analogy to Eq. (1.37), we now have for the distribution function the formula:

$$F(x, y) = \sum_{x_i \leq x} \sum_{y_j \leq y} f(x_i, y_j).$$

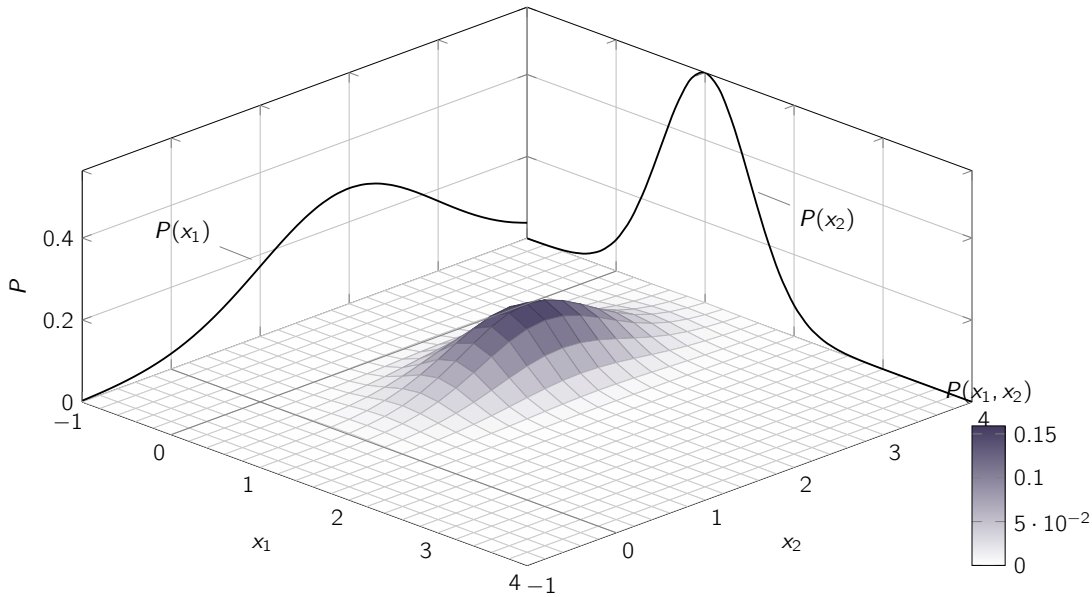


Figure 1.10: Many samples from a bivariate normal distribution. The marginal distributions are shown on the x -axis. The marginal distribution of X is also approximated by creating a histogram of the X coordinates without consideration of the Y coordinates.

Instead of Eq. (1.39), we now have the condition:

$$\sum_i \sum_j f(x_i, y_j) = 1.$$

1.9.2 Continuous Two-Dimensional Distribution

In analogy to the case of a single random variable, we call (X, Y) and its distribution **continuous** if the corresponding distribution function $F(x, y)$ can be given by a double integral:

$$F(x, y) = \int_{-\infty}^y \int_{-\infty}^x f(x^*, y^*) dx^* dy^* \quad (1.65)$$

whose integrand f , called the **density** of (X, Y) , is non-negative everywhere, and is continuous, possibly except on finitely many curves.

From Eq. (1.65) we obtain the probability that (X, Y) assume any value in a rectangle (Fig. 523) given by the formula:

$$P(a_1 < X \leq b_1, a_2 < Y \leq b_2) = \int_{a_1}^{b_1} \int_{a_2}^{b_2} f(x, y) dx dy$$

1.9.3 Marginal Distributions of a Discrete Distribution

This is a rather natural idea, without counterpart for a single random variable.

It amounts to being interested only in one of the two variables in (X, Y) , say, X , and asking for its distribution, called the **marginal distribution** of X in (X, Y) . So we ask for the probability $P(X = x, Y)$ arbitrary.

Since (X, Y) is discrete, so is X . We get its probability function, call it $f_1(x)$, from the probability function $f(x, y)$ of (X, Y) by summing over y :

$$f_1(x) = P(X = x, Y, \text{arbitrary}) = \sum_y f(x, y) \quad (1.66)$$

where we sum all the values of $f(x, y)$ that are not 0 for that x .

From Eq. (1.66) we see that the distribution function of the marginal distribution of X is

$$F_1(x) = P(X \leq x, Y, \text{arbitrary}) = \sum_{x^* \leq x} f_1(x^*).$$

Similarly, the probability function

$$f_2(y) = P(X \text{arbitrary}, Y \equiv y) = \sum_x f(x, y)$$

determines the **marginal distribution** of Y in (X, Y) . Here we sum all the values of $f(x, y)$ that are not zero for the corresponding y . The distribution function of this marginal distribution is

$$F_2(y) = P(X \text{arbitrary}, Y \equiv y) = \sum_{y^* \equiv y} f_2(y^*).$$

Exercise 1.18: Marginal Distributions of a Discrete Two-Dimensional Random Variable

In drawing 3 cards with replacement from a bridge deck let us consider

(X, Y) where X = Number of queens and Y = Number of kings or aces.

The deck has 52 cards. These include 4 queens, 4 kings, and 4 aces. Therefore, in a single trial a queen has probability:

$$\frac{4}{52} = \frac{1}{13}$$

and a king or ace:

$$\frac{8}{52} = \frac{2}{13}$$

This gives the probability function of (X, Y) as:

$$f(x, y) = \frac{3!}{x!y!(3-x-y)} \left(\frac{1}{13}\right)^x \left(\frac{2}{13}\right)^y \left(\frac{10}{13}\right)^{3-x-y} \quad \text{where } (x+y \leq 3)$$

and $f(x, y) = 0$ otherwise.

1.9.4 Marginal Distributions of a Continuous Distribution

This is conceptually the same as for discrete distributions, with probability functions and sums replaced by densities and integrals. For a continuous random variable (X, Y) with density $f(x, y)$ we now have the **marginal distribution** of X in (X, Y) , defined by the distribution function

$$F_1(x) = P(X \leq x, -\infty < Y < \infty) = \int_{-\infty}^x f_1(x^*) dx^*$$

with the density f_1 of X obtained from $f(x, y)$ by integration over y ,

$$f_1(x) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x, y) dy.$$

Interchanging the roles of X and Y , we obtain the **marginal distribution** of Y in (X, Y) with the distribution function

$$F_2(y) = P(-\infty < X < \infty, Y \leq y) = \int_{-\infty}^y f_2(y^*) dy^*$$

and density

$$f_2(y) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x, y) dx.$$

1.9.5 Independence of Random Variables

X and Y in a, discrete or continuous, random variable (X, Y) are said to be **independent** if

$$F(x, y) = F_1(x)F_2(y)$$

holds for all (x, y) . Otherwise these random variables are said to be **dependent**. Necessary and sufficient for independence is

$$f(x, y) = f_1(x)f_2(y)$$

for all x and y . Here the f 's are the above probability functions if (X, Y) is discrete or those densities if (X, Y) is continuous.

Exercise 1.19: Independence and Dependence

In tossing a 50 cent and a 20 cent coin, with X being the number of heads on the 50 cent, and Y number of heads on the 20 cent, we may assume the values 0 or 1 and are independent.

Extension of Independence to n -Dimensional Random Variables. This will be needed throughout Chapter 2. The distribution of such a random variable $\mathbf{X} = (X_1, \dots, X_n)$ is determined by a **distribution function** of the form

$$F(x_1, \dots, x_n) = P(X_1 \leq x_1, \dots, X_n \leq x_n).$$

The random variables X_1, \dots, X_n are said to be **independent** if

$$F(x_1, \dots, x_n) = F_1(x_1)F_2(x_2) \cdots F_n(x_n)$$

for all (x_1, \dots, x_n) . Here $F_j(x_j)$ is the distribution function of the marginal distribution of X_j in \mathbf{X} , that is,

$$F_j(x_j) = P(X_j \leq x_j, X_k \text{ arbitrary}, k = 1, \dots, n, k \neq j).$$

Otherwise these random variables are said to be **dependent**.

1.9.6 Functions of Random Variables

When $n = 2$, we write $X_1 = X$, $X_2 = Y$, $x_1 = x$, $x_2 = y$. Taking a non-constant continuous function $g(x, y)$ defined for all x, y , we obtain a random variable $Z = g(X, Y)$.

For example, if we roll two (2) dice and X and Y are the numbers the dice turn up in a trial, then $Z = X + Y$ is the sum of those two (2) numbers.

In the case of a discrete random variable (X, Y) we may obtain the probability function $f(z)$ of $Z = g(X, Y)$ by summing all $f(x, y)$ for which $g(x, y)$ equals the value of z considered; thus

$$f(z) = P(Z = z) = \sum_{g(x,y)=z} f(x, y).$$

Hence the distribution function of Z is

$$F(z) = P(Z \leq z) = \sum_{g(x,y) \leq z} f(x, y),$$

where we sum all values of $f(x, y)$ for which $g(x, y) \leq z$.

In the case of a continuous random variable (X, Y) we similarly have

$$F(z) = P(Z \leq z) = \iint_{g(x,y) \leq z} f(x, y) \, dx \, dy$$

where for each z we integrate the density $f(x, y)$ of (X, Y) over the region $g(x, y) \leq z$ in the xy -plane, the boundary curve of this region being $g(x, y) = z$.

1.9.7 Addition of Means

The number

$$E(g(X, Y)) = \begin{cases} \sum_x \sum_y g(x, y) f(x, y) & \text{where } X, Y \text{ are discrete} \\ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} g(x, y) f(x, y) \, dx \, dy & \text{where } X, Y \text{ are continuous} \end{cases} \quad (1.67)$$

is called the **mathematical expectation** or, briefly, the **expectation of** $g(X, Y)$. Here it is assumed that the double series converges absolutely and the integral of $|g(x, y)| f(x, y)$ over the y -plane exists⁴⁷. Since summation and integration are linear processes, we have from Eq. (1.67):

$$E(ag(X, Y) + bh(X, Y)) = aE(g(X, Y)) + bE(h(X, Y))$$

An important special case is

$$E(X + Y) = E(X) + E(Y),$$

and by induction we have the following result.

⁴⁷meaning it is finite.

Theory 1.16: Addition of Means

The mean (expectation) of a sum of random variables equals the sum of the means (expectations), that is,

$$E(X_1 + X_2 + \cdots + X_n) = E(X_1) + E(X_2) + \cdots + E(X_n).$$

We can also deduce the following statement:

Theory 1.17: Multiplication of Means

The mean (expectation) of the product of independent random variables equals the product of the means (expectations), that is,

$$E(X_1 X_2 \cdots X_n) = E(X_1) E(X_2) \cdots E(X_n).$$

and in the continuous case the proof of the relation is similar⁴⁸.

⁴⁸This is left as an exercise to the reader.

1.9.8 Addition of Variances

A final matter to cover is how we can sum up variances. Similar to before, let $Z = X + Y$ and denote the mean and variance of Z by μ and σ^2 .

Then we first have:

$$\sigma^2 = E([Z - \mu]^2) = E(Z^2) - [E(Z)]^2$$

From (24) we see that the first term on the right equals

$$E(Z^2) = E(X^2 + 2XY + Y^2) = E(X^2) + 2E(XY) + E(Y^2).$$

For the second term on the right we obtain from Theorem 1

$$[E(Z)]^2 = [E(X) + E(Y)]^2 = [E(X)]^2 + 2E(X)E(Y) + [E(Y)]^2$$

By substituting these expressions into the formula for σ^2 we have

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma^2 &= E(X^2) - [E(X)]^2 + E(Y^2) - [E(Y)]^2 \\ &\quad + 2[E(XY) - E(X)E(Y)]. \end{aligned}$$

the expression in the first line on the right is the sum of the variances of X and Y , which we denote by σ_1^2 and σ_2^2 , respectively.

The quantity in the second line (except for the factor 2) is:

$$\sigma_{XY} = E(XY) - E(X)E(Y), \quad (1.68)$$

and is called the **covariance** of X and Y . Consequently, our result is

$$\sigma^2 = \sigma_1^2 + \sigma_2^2 + 2\sigma_{XY}.$$

If X and Y are **independent**, then

$$E(XY) = E(X)E(Y);$$

hence $\sigma_{XY} = 0$, and

$$\sigma^2 = \sigma_1^2 + \sigma_2^2$$

Extension to more than two variables gives the basic

Theory 1.18: Addition of Variances

The variance of the sum of independent random variables equals the sum of the variances of these variables.

Chapter 2

Statistical Methods

Table of Contents

2.1	Introduction	41
2.2	Point Estimation of Parameters	45
2.3	Confidence Intervals	48
2.4	Testing of Hypotheses and Making Decisions	54
2.5	Quality Control	59
2.6	Acceptance Sampling	63
2.7	Goodness of Fit	66
2.8	Non-parametric Tests	69

2.1 Introduction

Statistical¹ methods consists of a wide range of tools for designing and evaluating random experiments to **obtain information** about practical problems:

¹The word is derived from New Latin *statistica* or *statisticus* ("of the state")

such as exploring the relation between iron content and density of iron ore, the quality of raw material or manufactured products, the efficiency of air-conditioning systems, the performance of certain cars, the effect of advertising, the reactions of consumers to a new product, etc.

Therefore, it is an important topic for any engineer as **Random variables** occur more frequently in engineering² than one would think. For example, properties of mass-produced articles³ always exhibit **random variation**, due to small⁴ differences in raw material or manufacturing processes.

²and of course elsewhere.

³such as screws, light bulbs, electric machines, etc.

⁴often uncontrollable

Therefore, the diameter of screws is a random variable X and we have **non-defective screws**, with diameter between given tolerance limits, and **defective screws**, with diameter outside those limits.

We can ask for the distribution of X , for the percentage of defective screws to be expected, and for necessary improvements of the production process.

Samples are selected from populations:

20 screws from 1000 screws, 100 of 5000 voters, 8 behaviours in a wildlife observation.

as inspecting the entire sample, would be expensive, time-consuming, impossible or even senseless.⁵

To obtain a meaningful sense of information, samples must be **random selections**. Each of the 1000 screws must have the same chance of being sampled,⁶ at least approximately. Only then will the sample mean:

$$\bar{x} = \frac{1}{20} (x_1 + \cdots x_{20}) \quad \text{where} \quad n = 20,$$

will be a **good approximation** of the population mean μ , and the accuracy of the approximation will generally improve with increasing n , as we shall see.

This is also applicable to other statistical quantities such as standard deviation, variance, etc.

Independent sample values will be obtained in experiments with an infinite sample space S certainly for the **normal distribution**. This is also true in sampling with replacement. It is approximately true in drawing **small samples** from a large finite population.⁷ However, if we sample without replacement from a small population, the effect of dependence of sample values may be considerable.

Random numbers help in obtaining samples that are in fact random selections. This is sometimes not easy to accomplish as there are numerous subtle factors which can bias sampling.⁸ Random numbers can be obtained from a **random number generator**

It is important to state that the numbers generated by a computer are **NOT** truly random, as are calculated by a tricky formula that produces numbers that do have practically all the essential features of true randomness. Because these numbers eventually repeat, they must not be used in cryptography, for example, where true randomness is required.

Information: Generating Random Numbers

To select a sample of size $n = 10$ from 80 given ball bearings, we number the bearings from 1 to 80. We then let the generator randomly produce 10 of the integers from 1 to 80 and include the bearings with the numbers obtained in our sample, for example,

44 55 57 03 61 51 68 22 34 77

or whichever number pops up in your head.⁹

Representing and processing data were considered in the previous chapter in connection with **frequency distributions**. These are the **empirical counterparts** of probability distributions and helped motivating axioms and properties in probability theory. The new aspect in this chapter is **randomness**:

i.e., the data are samples selected **randomly** from a population.

⁵It would be inconceivable for a company who produces over a billion light bulbs to test all their products. That is why we have return policies.

⁶of being drawn when we sample.

⁷for instance, 5 or 10 of 1000 items.

⁸Such as by personal interviews, by poorly working machines, by the choice of non-typical observation conditions, etc.

⁹Of course in a professional setting you can't just write numbers like that as there is also a pattern when we make successive random number. Before the prevalence of computers there used to be books containing random numbers which people consulted.

Accordingly, we can already use the plots we have used in probability, such as stem-and-leaf plots, box plots, and histograms.

In this chapter, the mean \bar{x} we defined previously, will now be referred as **sample mean**.

$$\bar{x} = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{j=1}^n x_j = \frac{1}{n} (x_1 + x_2 + \cdots + x_n). \quad (2.1)$$

We call n the **sample size**, and similar to mean, the variance s^2 is called the **sample variance**:

$$s^2 = \frac{1}{n-1} \sum_{j=1}^n (x_j - \bar{x})^2 = \frac{1}{n-1} [(x_1 - \bar{x})^2 + \cdots + (x_n - \bar{x})^2], \quad (2.2)$$

and its positive square root, s is the **sample standard deviation**.

\bar{x} , s^2 , s are called **sample parameters** of a dataset.

Information: Optinal Read: John Snow and the Founding of Epidemiology

John Snow (1813 - 1858) was an English physician and a leader in the development of anaesthesia and medical hygiene. He is considered one of the founders of modern epidemiology and early germ theory, in part because of his work in tracing the source of a cholera outbreak in London's Soho, which he identified as a particular public water pump. Snow was a skeptic of the then-dominant miasma theory stated diseases such as cholera and bubonic plague were caused by pollution or a noxious form of "bad air". The germ theory of disease had not yet been developed, so Snow did not understand the mechanism by which the disease was transmitted. His observation of the evidence led him to discount the theory of foul air. He first published his theory in an 1849 essay, *On the Mode of Communication of Cholera*, followed by a more detailed treatise in 1855 incorporating the results of his investigation of the role of the water supply in the Soho epidemic of 1854.

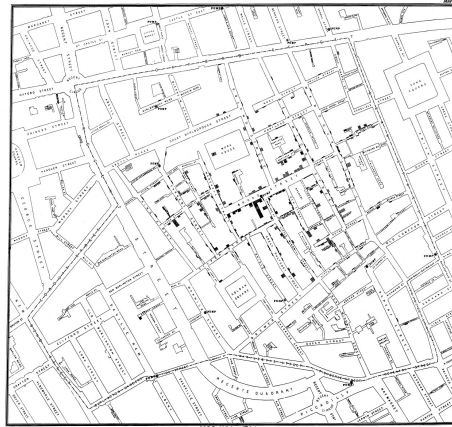


Figure 2.1: Original map by John Snow showing the clusters of cholera cases in the London epidemic of 1854, drawn and lithographed by Charles Cheffins.

By talking to local residents, he identified the source of the outbreak as the public water pump on Broad Street (now Broadwick Street). Although Snow's chemical and microscope examination of a water sample from the Broad Street pump did not conclusively prove its danger, his studies of the pattern of the disease were convincing enough to persuade the local council to disable the well pump by removing its handle.

This action has been commonly credited as ending the outbreak, but Snow observed that the epidemic may have already been in rapid decline.

2.2 Point Estimation of Parameters

Before we dive deep into statistics, let's spend some time to learn the most basic practical tasks in statistics and corresponding statistical methods to accomplish them. The first is point **estimation of parameters**, that is, of **quantities** appearing in distributions:

such as p in the binomial distribution and μ and σ in the normal distribution.

A **point estimate** of a parameter is a number,¹⁰ which is computed from a given sample and serves as an **approximation of the unknown exact value** of the parameter of the population. An interval estimate is an interval¹¹ obtained from a sample. Think of it as a value which is a sensible guess for that parameter.

¹⁰which is a point on the real line.

¹¹also known as confidence interval.

Estimation of parameters is of great practical importance in many applications.

As an approximation¹² of the mean of a population we may take the mean \bar{x} of a corresponding sample. This gives the estimate $\hat{\mu} = \bar{x}$ for μ , that is,

$$\hat{\mu} = \bar{x} = \frac{1}{n} (x_1 + \cdots + x_n), \quad (2.3)$$

¹²To describe something which is an approximation or an educated guess, we use hat (i.e., \hat{x}) notation. This is applicable for fields in statistics, machine learning or data science.

where n is the sample size. Similarly, an estimate $\hat{\sigma}^2$ for the variance of a population is the variance s^2 of a corresponding sample, that is:

$$\hat{\sigma}^2 = s^2 = \frac{1}{n-1} \sum_{j=1}^n (x_j - \bar{x})^2. \quad (2.4)$$

As can be seen, both Eq. (2.3) and Eq. (2.4) are estimates¹³ of parameters for distributions in which μ or σ^2 appear explicitly as parameters, such as the normal and Poisson distributions.

¹³There are numerous practical examples for parameter estimation, such as using political polls to estimate voter turnout or the proportion of voters who will vote for a particular candidate, estimating the proportion of consumers interested in a product before massive production, or estimating the success rate of a product

An estimator is not expected to estimate the population parameter without error. We do not expect \bar{x} to estimate μ exactly, but we certainly hope that it is not far off.

For the binomial distribution, $p = \mu/n$. From Eq. (2.3) we obtain for p the estimate:

$$\hat{p} = \frac{\bar{x}}{n}. \quad (2.5)$$

It is important to mention Eq. (2.3) is a special case of the so-called **method of moments**. Here, the parameters to be estimated are expressed in terms of the moments of the distribution. In the resulting formulas, those moments of the distribution are replaced by the corresponding moments of the sample, which gives the estimates. Here the k^{th} moment of a sample x_1, \dots, x_n is:

$$m_k = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{j=1}^n x_j^k. \quad (2.6)$$

2.2.1 Maximum Likelihood Method



Another method for obtaining estimates is the so-called **maximum likelihood method** conceived by R. A. Fisher.¹⁴ To explain it, we consider a discrete (or continuous) random variable X whose probability function (or density) $f(x)$ depends on a single parameter θ . We take a corresponding sample of n **independent** values x_1, \dots, x_n . Then in the discrete case the probability given a sample of size n consists precisely of those n values is

$$L(x_1, x_2; \theta_1) = f(x_1) f(x_2) \cdots f(x_n). \quad (2.7)$$

In the continuous case the probability that the sample consists of values in the small intervals $x_j \leq x \leq x_j + \Delta x$ where $(j = 1, 2, \dots, n)$ is

$$f(x_1) \Delta x f(x_2) \Delta x \cdots f(x_n) \Delta x = L(\Delta x)^n, \quad (2.8)$$

as $f(x_j)$ depends on θ , the function L in Eq. (2.8) given by Eq. (2.7) depends on x_1, \dots, x_n and θ .

We imagine x_1, \dots, x_n to be given and **fixed**.

Then L is a function of θ , which is called the **likelihood function**. The basic idea of the maximum likelihood method is quite simple, as follows.

We choose an approximation for the unknown value of θ for which L is **as large as possible**.

If L is a differentiable function of θ , a necessary condition for L to have a maximum in an interval¹⁵ is

$$\frac{\partial L}{\partial \theta} = 0 \quad (2.9)$$

A solution of Eq. (2.9) depending on x_1, \dots, x_n is called a **maximum likelihood estimate** for θ .

We may replace Eq. (2.9) by:¹⁶

$$\frac{\partial \ln L}{\partial \theta} = 0 \quad (2.10)$$

as $f(x_j) > 0$, a maximum of L is in general positive, and $\ln L$ is a monotone increasing function of L . This often simplifies calculations due to constant multiplication of the same function n times to get L . The use of \ln turns the exponentiation parameter to a multiplication parameter.

Several Parameters

If the distribution of X involves r parameters $\theta_1, \dots, \theta_r$, then instead of Eq. (2.9) we have the r conditions $\partial \ln L / \partial \theta_1, \dots, \partial \ln L / \partial \theta_r = 0$, and instead of Eq. (2.10) we have:

$$\frac{\partial \ln L}{\partial \theta_1} = 0, \dots, \frac{\partial \ln L}{\partial \theta_r} = 0. \quad (2.11)$$

¹⁴Considered the father of modern statistics. For his work in statistics, he has been described as "a genius who almost single-handedly created the foundations for modern statistical science" and "the single most important figure in 20th century statistics". Fisher has also been praised as a pioneer of the Information Age. His work on a mathematical theory of information ran parallel to the work of Claude Shannon and Norbert Wiener, though based on statistical theory.

¹⁵not at the boundary.

¹⁶It is worth noting that if the function is **NOT** derivable in some points of the domain, critical point is not a maximum, and the global maximum occurs on the boundary of the domain, it may be required to take the 2nd derivative [1]. However, if you know that the function you are trying to estimate the parameter has one (1) critical point, a single derivative would suffice.

Exercise 2.1: Maximum Likelihood of Gaussian Distribution

Find maximum likelihood estimates for $\theta_1 = \mu$ and $\theta_2 = \sigma$ in the case of the normal distribution.

Solution

We obtain the likelihood function:

$$L = \left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \right)^n \left(\frac{1}{\sigma} \right)^n e^{-h}$$

where
$$h = \frac{1}{2\sigma^2} \sum_{j=1}^n (x_j - \mu)^2.$$

Taking logarithms, we have

$$\ln L = -n \ln \sqrt{2\pi} - n \ln \sigma - h.$$

The first equation for the parameters is $\frac{\partial \ln L}{\partial \mu} = 0$, written out:

$$\frac{\partial \ln L}{\partial \mu} = -\frac{\partial h}{\partial \mu} = \frac{1}{\sigma^2} \sum_{j=1}^n (x_j - \mu) = 0,$$

therefore
$$\sum_{j=1}^n x_j - n\mu = 0.$$

The solution is the desired estimate $\hat{\mu}$ for μ : we find

$$\hat{\mu} = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{j=1}^n x_j = \bar{x}.$$

The second equation for the parameter is $\partial \ln L / \partial \sigma = 0$, written out

$$\frac{\partial \ln L}{\partial \sigma} = -\frac{n}{\sigma} - \frac{\partial h}{\partial \sigma} = -\frac{1}{\sigma} + \frac{1}{\sigma^3} \sum_{j=1}^n (x_j - \mu)^2 = 0.$$

Replacing μ by $\hat{\mu}$ and solving for σ^2 , we obtain the estimate:

$$\hat{\sigma}^2 = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{j=1}^n (x_j - \bar{x})^2 \quad \blacksquare$$

Exercise 2.2: Maximum Likelihood of Poisson Distribution

Consider a Poisson distribution with probability mass function:

$$f(x|\mu) = \frac{e^{-\mu} \mu^x}{x!} \quad \text{where } x = 0, 1, 2, \dots$$

Suppose that a random sample x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n is taken from the distribution. What is the maximum likelihood estimate of μ ?

Solution

The likelihood function is

$$L(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n; \mu) = \prod_{i=1}^n f(x_i|\mu) = \frac{e^{-n\mu} \sum_{i=1}^n x_i}{\prod_{i=1}^n x_i!}.$$

Now consider its logarithmic representation:

$$\ln L(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n; \mu) = -n\mu + \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \ln \mu - \ln \prod_{i=1}^n x_i!$$

And taking its partial derivative to the parameter gives:

$$\frac{\partial \ln L(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n; \mu)}{\partial \mu} = -n + \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{x_i}{\mu}.$$

Solving for $\hat{\mu}$, the maximum likelihood estimator, involves setting the derivative to zero and solving for the parameter. Therefore,

$$\hat{\mu} = \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{x_i}{n} = \bar{x}$$

If you were to test it, the second derivative of the log-likelihood function is **negative**, which implies that the solution above indeed is a maximum. As μ is the mean of the Poisson distribution, the sample average would certainly seem like a reasonable estimator \blacksquare .

Applications

There are numerous applications for **Maximum Likelihood Estimation**, for example when dealing with design and control systems in engineering [2], it is used to estimate system parameters based on noisy measurements. In the financial sector [3], it can help estimate parameters of models like Black-Scholes-Merton [4], which describe the dynamics of financial derivatives, and in Biology, it is used in genetic mapping [5] and genome-wide association studies [6].

2.3 Confidence Intervals



Confidence intervals¹⁷ for an unknown parameter θ of some distribution (e.g., $\theta = \mu$) are intervals $\theta_1 \leq \theta \leq \theta_2$ which contain θ , **NOT** with certainty but with a **high probability** γ , which we can choose where 95% and 99% are popular choices. Such an interval is calculated from a sample. $\gamma = 95\%$ means probability $1 - \gamma = 5\% = 1/20$ of being wrong. Instead of writing $\theta_1 \leq \theta \leq \theta_2$, we denote this more **distinctly** by writing:

$$\text{CONF}_\gamma \{ \theta_1 \leq \theta \leq \theta_2 \} \quad (2.12)$$

Such a special symbol, CONF, seems worthwhile to avoid the misunderstanding that θ **must** lie between θ_1 and θ_2 .

γ is called the **confidence level**, and θ_1 and θ_2 are called the **lower** and **upper confidence limits**, respectively and **depend** on the γ value. The larger we **choose** γ , the smaller is the error probability $1 - \gamma$, but the longer is the confidence interval.

As $\gamma \rightarrow 1$, the interval goes to infinity.

The choice of γ depends on the type of application.

In taking no umbrella, a 5% chance of getting wet is **NOT** a problem. In a medical decision of life or death, a 5% chance of being wrong may be too large and a 1% chance of being wrong ($\gamma = 99\%$) may be more desirable.

Confidence intervals are more valuable than point estimates. We can take the midpoint of Eq. (2.12) as an approximation of θ and half the length of Eq. (2.12) as an error bound.¹⁸

θ_1 and θ_2 in Eq. (2.12) are calculated from a sample x_1, \dots, x_n . These are n observations of a random variable X . Now comes a **trick**.

We regard x_1, \dots, x_n as single observations of n random variables X_1, \dots, X_n .¹⁹ Then $\theta_1 = \theta_1(x_1, \dots, x_n)$ and $\theta_2 = \theta_2(x_1, \dots, x_n)$ in Eq. (2.12) are observed values of two (2) random variables $\Theta_1 = \Theta_1(X_1, \dots, X_n)$ and $\Theta_2 = \Theta_2(X_1, \dots, X_n)$. The condition Eq. (2.12) involving γ can now be written:²⁰

$$P(\Theta_1 \leq \theta \leq \Theta_2) = \gamma. \quad (2.13)$$

Let us see what all this means in concrete practical cases.

In each case in this section we shall first state the steps of obtaining a confidence interval in the form of a table, then consider a typical example, and finally justify those steps theoretically.

¹⁷Established by Jerzy Neyman. He proposed and studied randomised experiments in 1923. Furthermore, his paper *On the Two Different Aspects of the Representative Method: The Method of Stratified Sampling and the Method of Purposive Selection* [7], given at the Royal Statistical Society in 1934, was the groundbreaking event leading to modern scientific sampling. He introduced the confidence interval in his paper in 1937 [8]. Another noted contribution is the Neyman-Pearson lemma, the basis of hypothesis testing [9].

¹⁸not in the strict sense of numerical means, but except for an error whose probability we know.

¹⁹with the same distribution as X

²⁰As an example, to say that there is 95% confidence is shorthand for "95% of all possible samples of a given size from this population will result in an interval that captures the unknown parameter."

For Mean with Known Variance in Normal Distribution

The method of tackling this problem is as follows:

1. Choose a confidence level for γ :²¹
2. Determine the corresponding c :

²¹95%, 99%, depending on the application.

γ	0.90	0.95	0.99	0.999
c	1.645	1.960	2.576	3.291

Table 2.1: Useful c values based on a given confidence (γ) value.

3. Calculate the mean \bar{x} of the sample x_1, \dots, x_n .
4. Calculate $k = c\sigma/\sqrt{n}$. The confidence interval for μ is

$$\text{CONF}_{\gamma} \{ \bar{x} - k \leq \mu \leq \bar{x} + k \}. \quad (2.14)$$

Exercise 2.3: Confidence Interval for Mean with known Variance in Normal Distribution

Determine 95% confidence interval for the mean of a normal distribution with variance $\sigma^2 = 9$, using a sample of $n = 100$ values with mean $\bar{x} = 5$.

Solution

1. First we define γ as 0.95 based on the 95% confidence.
2. Then looking at our reference table find the corresponding c which equals 1.960.
3. $\bar{x} = 5$ is given.

4. We need:

$$k = c \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}} = 1.960 \frac{3}{\sqrt{100}} = 0.588$$

Therefore

$$\bar{x} - k = 4.412 \quad \text{and} \quad \bar{x} + k = 5.588$$

and the confidence interval is:

$$\text{CONF}_{0.95} \{ 4.412 \leq \mu \leq 5.588 \} \quad \blacksquare$$

Theory 2.19: Sum of Independent Normal Random Variables

Let X_1, \dots, X_n be independent normal random variables each of which has mean μ and variance σ^2 .

Then the following holds:

- a. The sum $X_1 + \dots + X_n$ is normal with mean $n\mu$ and variance $n\sigma^2$.
- b. The following random variable \bar{X} is normal with mean μ and variance σ^2/n .

$$\bar{X} = \frac{1}{n} (X_1 + \dots + X_n) \quad (2.15)$$

- c. The following random variable Z is normal with mean 0 and variance 1.

$$Z = \frac{\bar{X} - \mu}{\sigma/\sqrt{n}}$$

Exercise 2.4: Sample Size Needed for a Confidence Interval of Prescribed Length

How large must n be in the Example **Confidence Interval for mean with known variance in Normal Distribution** to obtain a 95% confidence interval of length $L = 0.4$?

Solution

The interval in Example **Confidence Interval for mean with known variance in Normal Distribution** has the length:

$$L = 2k = 2c\sigma/\sqrt{n}.$$

Solving for n , we obtain

$$n = \left(\frac{2c\sigma}{L} \right)^2$$

In the present case the answer is:

$$n = \left(\frac{2 \times 1.96 \times 3}{0.4} \right)^2 \approx 870 \quad \blacksquare$$

For Mean of the Normal Distribution with Unknown Variance

For practical applications, σ^2 is frequently **unknown**. Then the method described previously does **NOT** help and the whole theory changes, although the steps of determining a confidence interval for μ remain quite similar.

We see that k differs from previous method, namely, the sample standard deviation s has taken the place of the unknown standard deviation σ of the population as it is now the variance we are trying to estimate, and c now depends on the sample size n and must be determined from **Table A.5** to **Table A.7**. That table lists values z for given values of the distribution function.

$$F(z) = K_m \int_{-\infty}^x \left(1 + \frac{u^2}{m} \right)^{-(m+1)/2} du \quad (2.16)$$

of the t -distribution. Here, $m = 1, 2, \dots$ is a parameter, called the **number of degrees of freedom** of the distribution.²² In the present case, $m = n - 1$ where n is the number of sample we have to determine variance. The constant K_m is such that $F(\infty) = 1$. By integration it turns out that:²³

$$K_m = \frac{\Gamma\left(\frac{1}{2}m + \frac{1}{2}\right)}{\sqrt{m\pi}\Gamma\left(\frac{1}{2}m\right)},$$

where Γ is the gamma function.

The method of tackling this problem is as follows:

1. Choose a confidence level γ .²⁴
2. Determine the solution c of the equation,

$$F(c) = \frac{1}{2}(1 + \gamma)$$

from the table of the t -distribution with $m = n - 1$ degrees of freedom

3. Compute the mean \bar{x} and the variance s^2 of the sample x_1, \dots, x_n .
4. Compute $k = cs/\sqrt{n}$. The confidence interval is:

$$\text{CONF}_{\gamma}\{\bar{x} - k \leq \mu \leq \bar{x} + k\}.$$

²²abbreviated d.f.

²³For most practical application a reference Table would suffice to determine the parameter.

²⁴95%, 99%, or the like.

This illustrates that 2.1²⁵ provides **shorter** confidence intervals than Table XX, which enforces the idea getting a shorter interval range by increasing the sample size.

²⁵which uses more information, namely, the known value of σ^2

Exercise 2.5: Confidence Interval for Mean of Normal Distribution with Unknown Variance

The five (5) independent measurements of flash point of Diesel oil (D-2) gave the values (in°F):

144 147 146 142 144

If we assume normality, determine a 99% confidence interval for the mean.

Solution

1. $\gamma = 0.99$ is required based on 99% confidence level.
2. $F(c) = \frac{1}{2}(1 + \gamma) = 0.99$ and looking at the reference table with $n - 1 = 4$ d.f., which gives $c = 4.60$.
3. Calculating the mean and the variance gives $\bar{x} = 144.6$ and $s = 3.8$,

4. $k = \sqrt{3.8} \times 4.60 / \sqrt{5} = 4.01$. Therefore the confidence intervals:

$$\text{CONF}_{0.99} \{140.5 \leq \mu \leq 148.7\} \quad \blacksquare$$

If the variance σ^2 were known and equal to the sample variance s^2 , therefore $\sigma^2 = 3.8$, then the Reference Table would give:

$$k = \frac{c\sigma}{\sqrt{n}} = 2.576 \frac{\sqrt{3.8}}{\sqrt{5}} = 2.25$$

and

$$\text{CONF}_{0.99} \{142.35 \leq \mu \leq 146.85\} \quad \blacksquare$$

We see that the present interval is almost twice as long as that with a known variance $\sigma^2 = 3.8$.

Theory 2.20: Student's t-Distribution

Let X_1, \dots, X_n be independent normal random variables with the same mean μ and the same variance σ^2 . Then the random variable:

$$T = \frac{\bar{X} - \mu}{S/\sqrt{n}} \quad (2.17)$$

has a t-distribution²⁶ with $n - 1$ degrees of freedom (d.f.). Here X_1, \dots, X_n is given by Eq. (2.15) and S is defined as:

$$S^2 = \frac{1}{n-1} \sum_{j=1}^n (X_j - \bar{X})^2. \quad (2.18)$$



Figure 2.2: The student-t distribution with different degrees of freedom m .



²⁶William Gosset (1876 - 1937) was an English statistician, chemist and brewer who served as Head Brewer of Guinness and Head Experimental Brewer of Guinness and was a pioneer of modern statistics. He published his results under the pen name **student**.

Estimating the Variance of the Normal Distribution

The method for calculating the confidence interval is similar to the previous methods, with slight change in some steps which are as follows:

²⁷as usual this can be 95%, 99%, or the like.

1. Choose a confidence level γ .²⁷
2. Determine solutions c_1 and c_2 of the equations:

$$F(c_1) = \frac{1}{2}(1 - \gamma) \quad \text{and} \quad F(c_2) = \frac{1}{2}(1 + \gamma).$$

where the necessary values are calculated from the table of the chi-square distribution with $n - 1$ degrees of freedom., given in **Table A.8** to **Table A.10**.

3. Calculate $(n - 1)s^2$, where s^2 is the variance of the sample x_1, \dots, x_n .
4. Calculate $k_1 = (n - 1)s^2/c_1$ and $k_2 = (n - 1)s^2/c_2$. The confidence interval is

$$\text{CONF}_\gamma\{k_2 \leq \sigma^2 \leq k_1\}. \quad (2.19)$$

Theory 2.21: Chi-Square Distribution

Under the assumptions in Theorem **Student's t-Distribution** the random variable:

$$Y = (n - 1) \frac{S^2}{\sigma^2}$$

with S_2 given by Eq. (2.18) has a chi-square distribution with $n - 1$ degrees of freedom.

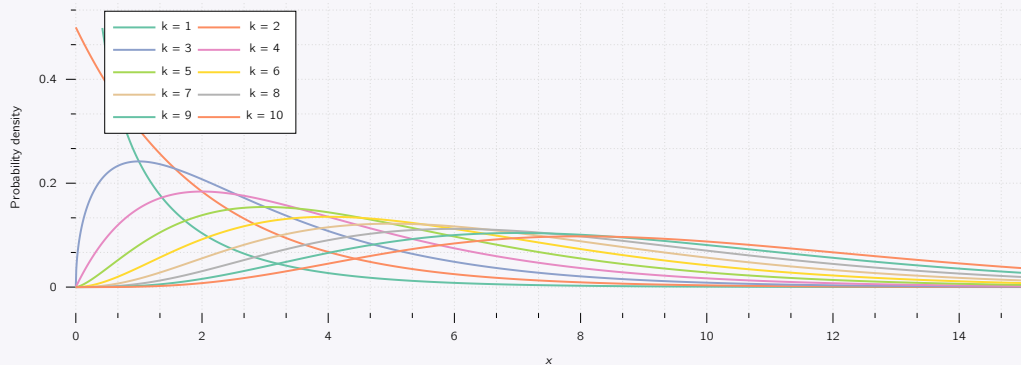


Figure 2.3: Chi-square distribution with different degrees of freedom.

The chi-squared distribution, which can be seen in **Fig. 2.3** is used primarily in **hypothesis testing**, and to a lesser extent for confidence intervals for population variance when the underlying distribution is **normal**. Unlike more widely known distributions such as the normal distribution and the exponential distribution, the chi-squared distribution is not as often applied in the direct modelling of natural phenomena.

The primary reason for which the chi-squared distribution is extensively used in hypothesis testing is its relationship to the normal distribution. Many hypothesis tests use a test statistic, such as the **t-student**. For these hypothesis tests, as the sample size n increases, the sampling distribution of the test statistic approaches the normal distribution²⁸ Because the test statistic (t) is asymptotically normally distributed, provided the sample size is sufficiently large, the distribution used for hypothesis testing may be approximated by a normal distribution.

So wherever a normal distribution could be used for a hypothesis test, a chi-squared distribution could be used.

²⁸This is the result of the central limit theorem.

Confidence Intervals for Parameters of Other Distributions

The methods mentioned previously for confidence intervals for μ and σ^2 are designed for the **normal distribution**. We will see it here that they can also be applied to other distributions if we **use large samples**.

We know that if X_1, \dots, X_n are independent random variables with the same mean μ and the same variance σ^2 , then their sum $Y_n = X_1 + \dots + X_n$ has the following properties:

- Y_n has the mean $n\mu$ and the variance $n\sigma^2$,
- If those variables are normal, then Y_n is normal.

If those random variables are **not normal**, then second property is **NOT** applicable. However, for large n the random variable Y_n is still **approximately** normal.

This follows from the **central limit theorem**, which is one of the most fundamental results in probability theory.

Theory 2.22: Central Limit Theorem

Let X_1, \dots, X_n be independent random variables having the same distribution function and therefore the same mean μ and variance σ^2 . Let $Y_n = X_1 + \dots + X_n$, then the random variable

$$Z_n = \frac{Y_n - n\mu}{\sigma\sqrt{n}}$$

is **asymptotically normal** with mean 0 and variance 1. That is, the distribution function $F(x)$ of Z_n satisfies:

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} F(x) = \Phi(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^x e^{-u^2/2} du.$$

This theorem basically boils down to the following statement:

Under appropriate conditions, the distribution of a normalised version of the sample mean converges to a standard normal distribution. This holds even if the original variables themselves are not normally distributed.

Therefore, when applying the previous confidence interval methods to a **non-normal distribution**, we must use sufficiently large samples.

As a rule of thumb, if the sample indicates that the skewness of the distribution is small, use at least $n = 20$ for the mean and at least $n = 50$ for the variance.



2.4 Testing of Hypotheses and Making Decisions

The ideas of confidence intervals and of tests²⁹ are the two (2) most important ideas in modern statistics. In a statistical test we make inference from sample to population through testing a **hypothesis**, resulting from experience or observations, from a theory or a quality requirement, and so on.

In many cases the result of a test is used as a basis for a **decision**:

to buy, or not to buy a certain model of car, depending on a test of the fuel efficiency (km L^{-1}), or, to apply some medication, depending on a test of its effect; to proceed with a marketing strategy, depending on a test of consumer reactions, etc.

As with most abstract mathematical concepts, it is better to explain such a test in terms of a typical example and then introduce the corresponding standard notions of statistical testing.

Information: Test of a Hypothesis

Let's say we want to buy 100 coils of a certain kind of wire, provided we can verify the manufacturer's claim, the wire has a specific strength of $\mu = \mu_0 = 200 \text{ kN m kg}^{-1}$, or more.

This is a test of the hypothesis:³⁰ $\mu = \mu_0 = 200$. We shall **NOT** buy the wire if the statistical tests shows that actually $\mu = \mu_1 < \mu_0$, the wire is weaker, the claim does **NOT** hold. μ_1 is called the **alternative** of the test.³¹ We shall **accept** the hypothesis if the test suggests that it is true, except for a small error probability α , called the **significance level** of the test.

Otherwise we reject the hypothesis.

Hence α is the probability of rejecting a hypothesis although it is true. The choice of α is up to us, 5% and 1% are popular values.

For the test we need a sample. We randomly select 25 coils of the wire, cut a piece from each coil, and determine the breaking limit experimentally. Suppose that this sample of $n = 25$ values of the breaking limit has the mean $\bar{x} = 197 \text{ kN m kg}^{-1}$, which is somewhat less than the claim, and the standard deviation $s = 6 \text{ kN m kg}^{-1}$.

At this point we could only speculate when this difference $197 - 200 = -3$ is due to randomness, is a chance effect, or whether it is **significant**, due to the actual inferior quality of the wire. To continue beyond speculation requires probability theory, as follows.

We assume that the blocking limit is normally distributed. Then

$$T = \frac{\bar{X} - \mu_0}{S/\sqrt{n}}$$

with $\mu = \mu_0$ has a **t-distribution** with $n - 1$ degrees of freedom ($n - 1 = 24$ for our sample). Also $\bar{x} = 197$ and $s = 6$ are observed values of \bar{X} and S to be used later. We can now choose a significance level, say, $\alpha = 5\%$. From the Reference Table, we then obtain a critical value c such that $P(T \leq c) = \alpha = 5\%$. For $P(T \leq \bar{c}) = 1 - \alpha = 95\%$ the table gives $\bar{c} = 1.71$, so that $c = -\bar{c} = -1.71$ because of the symmetry of the distribution shown in Fig. 2.4.

We now reason as follows—this is the crucial idea of the test. If the hypothesis is true, we have a chance of only α ($= 5\%$) that we observe a value t of T (calculated from a sample) that will fall between $-\infty$ and -1.71 . Hence, if we nevertheless do observe such a t , we start that the hypothesis cannot be true and we reject it.

A simple calculation gives:

$$T = \frac{(107 - 200)}{6/\sqrt{25}} = -2.5,$$

as an observed value of T . Since $-2.5 < -1.71$, we reject the hypothesis, the manufacturer's claim, and accept the alternative result of $\mu = \mu_1 < 200$, which means the wire seems to be weaker than claimed ■

²⁹The modern development of tests are generally attributed to Egon Sharpe Pearson and Neymar whom was mentioned previously. Egon Sharpe was one of three children of Karl Pearson and Maria, and, like his father, a British statistician. He is known throughout the world as co-author of the Neyman-Pearson theory of testing statistical hypotheses, and responsible for many important contributions to problems of statistical inference and methodology, especially in the development and use of the likelihood ratio criterion.

³⁰also called **null hypothesis**.

³¹or alternative hypothesis

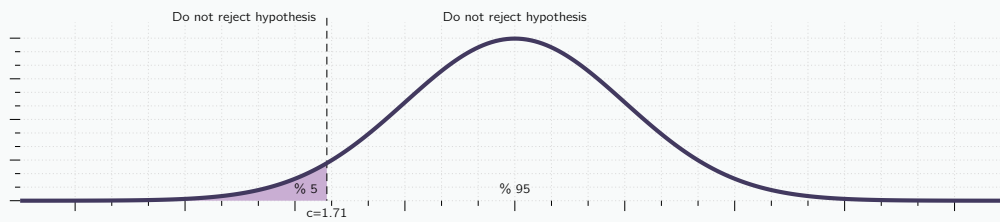


Figure 2.4: The t -distribution used in example. As can be seen, anything left of the critical line would tell us to reject the hypothesis, whereas if the t value lies on the RHS, then the test would tell us the null hypothesis is true.

This aforementioned example perfectly captures the **steps of a test**:

1. Formulate the **hypothesis** $\theta = \theta_0$ to be tested. In our previous example it is $\theta_0 = \mu_0$.
2. Formulate an **alternative** $\theta = \theta_1$, which in our example is $\theta_1 = \mu_1$.
3. Choose a **significance level** α with values such as 5%, 1%, or, 0.1%.
4. Use a random variable $\hat{\Theta} = g(X_1, \dots, X_n)$ whose distribution depends on the hypothesis and on the alternative, and this distribution is known in both cases.

Determine a critical value c from the distribution of $\hat{\Theta}$, assuming the hypothesis to be true. In the example, $\hat{\Theta} = T$, and c is, obtained from $P(T \leq c) = \alpha$.

5. Use a sample x_1, \dots, x_n to determine an observed value $\hat{\theta} = g(x_1, \dots, x_n)$ of $\hat{\Theta}$, where in our example it is t .
6. Accept or reject the hypothesis, depending on the size of $\hat{\theta}$ **relative** to c .

There are two (2) important facts require further discussion and careful attention.

1. The choice of an alternative. In the example, $\mu_1 < \mu_0$, but other applications may require $\mu_1 > \mu_0$ or $\mu_1 \neq \mu_0$ as not all application can fit the same criterion. Some applications may require an upper-bound, some lower-bound.
2. Addressing errors. We know that α , the significance level of the test, is the probability of reflecting a **true** hypothesis. And we shall discuss the probability β of accepting a **false** hypothesis.

One-Sided and Two-Sided Alternatives

Let θ be an **unknown parameter** in a distribution, and suppose we want to test the hypothesis $\theta = \theta_0$.

Then there are three (3) main kinds of alternatives, namely,

$$\theta > \theta_0 \quad (2.20)$$

$$\theta < \theta_0 \quad (2.21)$$

$$\theta \neq \theta_0 \quad (2.22)$$

Here Eq. (2.20), and Eq. (2.21) are **one-sided alternatives**, and Eq. (2.22) is a **two-sided alternative**.

³²or called the critical region

We call rejection region³² the region such that we reject the hypothesis if the observed value in the test falls in this region. In Eq. (2.20) the critical c lies to the right of θ_0 because so does the alternative. Hence the rejection region extends to the right. This is called a **right-sided test**. In Eq. (2.21) the critical c lies to the left of θ_0 (as in **Test of a Hypothesis**), the rejection region extends to the left, and we have a **left-sided test**. These are one-sided tests. In Eq. (2.22)

All three (3) kinds of alternatives occur in practical problems. For example, Eq. (2.20) may arise if θ_0 is the maximum tolerable inaccuracy of a voltmeter or some other instrument. Alternative Eq. (2.21) may occur in testing strength of material, as in **Test of a Hypothesis**. Finally, θ_0 in Eq. (2.22) may be the diameter of axle-shafts, and shafts that are too thin or too thick are equally undesirable, so that we have to watch for deviations in both directions.

2.4.1 Errors in Tests

Tests always involve **risks of making false decisions**:

I Rejecting a true hypothesis (Type I error)

■ α = Probability of making a Type I error.

II Accepting a false hypothesis (Type II error).

■ β = Probability of making a Type II error.

Clearly, we cannot avoid these errors.

No absolutely certain conclusions about populations can be drawn from samples.

But we show there are ways and means of choosing suitable levels of risks, that is, of values α and β . The choice of α depends on the nature of the problem.³³

³³e.g., a small risk $\alpha = \%1$ is used if it is a matter of life or death.

Let us discuss this systematically for a test of a hypothesis $\theta = \theta_0$ against an alternative that is a single number θ_1 , for simplicity. We let $\theta_1 > \theta_0$, so that we have a **right-sided test**. For a left-sided or a two-sided test the discussion is quite similar.

We choose a critical $c > \theta_0$. From a given sample x_1, \dots, x_n we then compute a value:

$$\hat{\theta} = g(x_1, \dots, x_n)$$

with a suitable g .

the choice of g will be a main point of our further discussion; for instance, take $g = (x_1 + \dots + x_n) / n$ in the case in which θ is the mean.

If $\hat{\theta} > c$, we **reject the hypothesis**. If $\hat{\theta} \leq c$, we accept it. Here, the value $\hat{\theta}$ can be regarded as an observed value of the random variable

$$\hat{\Theta} = g(X_1, \dots, X_n)$$

because x_j may be regarded as an observed value of X_j where $j = 1, \dots, n$. In this test there are two (2) possibilities of making an error, as follows.

Type I Error The hypothesis is true but is rejected³⁴ because $\hat{\Theta}$ assumes a value $\hat{\theta} > c$. Obviously, the probability of making such an error equals ³⁴hence the alternative is accepted.

$$P(\hat{\Theta} > c)_{\theta} = \theta_0 = \alpha. \quad (2.23)$$

α is called the **significance level** of the test, as mentioned before.

Type II Error The hypothesis is false but is accepted because $\hat{\Theta}$ assumes a value $\hat{\theta} \leq c$. The probability of making such an error is denoted by β ; Therefore:

$$P(\hat{\Theta} \leq c)_{\theta=\theta_0} = \beta. \quad (2.24)$$

$\eta = 1 - \beta$ is called the **power** of the test. Obviously, the power η is the probability of avoiding a Type II error. Formulas Eq. (2.23) and Eq. (2.24) show that both α and β depend on c , and

		Auxiliary Values	
		$\theta = \theta_0$	$\theta = \theta_1$
Accepted	$\theta = \theta_0$	True Decision $P = 1 - \alpha$	Type II Error $P = \beta$
	$\theta = \theta_1$	Type I Error $P = \alpha$	True Decision $P = 1 - \beta$

Table 2.2: Type I and Type II errors in testing a hypothesis $\theta = \theta_0$ against an alternative $\theta = \theta_1$.

we would like to choose c so these probabilities of making errors are as small as possible. But the important **Fig. 2.5** shows that these are conflicting requirements because to let α decrease we must shift c to the right, but then β increases. In practice we first choose α (5%, sometimes 1%), then determine c , and finally compute β . If β is large so that the power $\eta = 1 - \beta$ is small, we should repeat the test, choosing a larger sample, for reasons that will appear shortly. If the alternative is

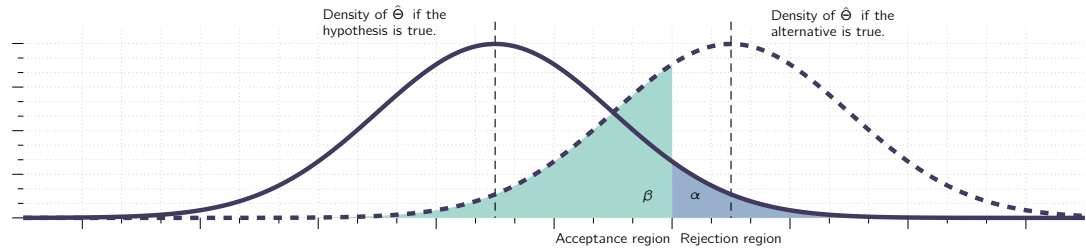


Figure 2.5: Illustration of Type I and II errors in testing a hypothesis $\theta = \theta_0$ against an alternative $\theta = \theta_1$.

NOT a single number but is of the form Eq. (2.20)-Eq. (2.22), then β becomes a function of θ . This function $\beta(\theta)$ is called the operating characteristic (OC) of the test and its curve the OC curve. Clearly, in this case $\eta = 1 - \beta$ also depends on θ . This function $\eta(\theta)$ is called the **power function** of the test.

Of course, from a test that leads to the acceptance of a certain hypothesis θ_0 , it does **NOT** follow that this is the only possible hypothesis or the best possible hypothesis. Hence the terms “not reject” or “fail to reject” are perhaps better than the term “accept”.

Exercise 2.6: Test for the Mean of the Normal Distribution with Known Variance

Let X be a normal random variable with variance $\sigma^2 = 9$. Using a sample of size $n = 10$ with mean \bar{x} , test the hypothesis $\mu = \mu_0 = 24$ against the three (3) kinds of alternatives, namely,

$$(a) \mu > \mu_0 \quad (b) \mu < \mu_0 \quad (c) \mu \neq \mu_0$$

Solution

We choose the significance level $\alpha = 0.05$ as it is customary at this point. An estimate of the mean will be obtained from:

$$\bar{X} = \frac{1}{n} (X_1 + \cdots + X_n).$$

If the hypothesis is true, \bar{X} is normal with mean $\mu = 24$ and variance $\sigma^2/n = 0.9$. Therefore we may obtain the critical value c from X .

Right-Sided Test We determine c from

$$P(\bar{X} > c)_{\mu=24} = \alpha = 0.05$$

that is,

$$P(\hat{X} \leq c)_{\mu=24} = \Phi\left(\frac{c-24}{\sqrt{0.9}}\right) = 1 - \alpha = 0.95.$$

Reverse engineering Table A.4 by looking for 0.95 percentile gives $(c - 24) / \sqrt{0.9} = 1.645$, and $c = 25.56$, which is greater than μ_0 . If $\bar{x} \leq 25.56$, the hypothesis is **accepted**. If $\bar{x} > 25.56$, it is rejected ■

Left-Sided Test The critical value c is obtained from the equation

$$P(\hat{X} \leq c)_{\mu=24} = \Phi\left(\frac{c-24}{\sqrt{0.9}}\right) = \alpha = 0.05.$$

Reverse engineering Table A.4 by looking for 0.95 percentile gives $c = 24 - \sqrt{0.9} \times 1.645 = 22.44$. If $\hat{x} \geq 22.44$, we accept the hypothesis. If $\hat{x} < 22.44$, we reject it ■

Two-Sided Test As the normal distribution is **symmetric**, we choose c_1 and c_2 equidistant from $\mu = 24$, say, $c_1 = 24 - k$ and $c_2 = 24 + k$, and determine k from:

$$P(24 - k \leq \hat{X} \leq 24 + k)_{\mu=24} = \Phi\left(\frac{k}{\sqrt{0.9}}\right) - \Phi\left(\frac{-k}{\sqrt{0.9}}\right) = 1 - \alpha = 0.95.$$

Looking for 0.975 in Table A.4 gives $k/\sqrt{0.9} = 1.960$, therefore $k = 1.86$. This gives the values $c_1 = 24 - 1.86 = 22.14$ and $c_2 = 24 + 1.86 = 25.86$. If \hat{x} is not smaller than c_1 and not greater than c_2 , we accept the hypothesis. Otherwise, we reject it ■

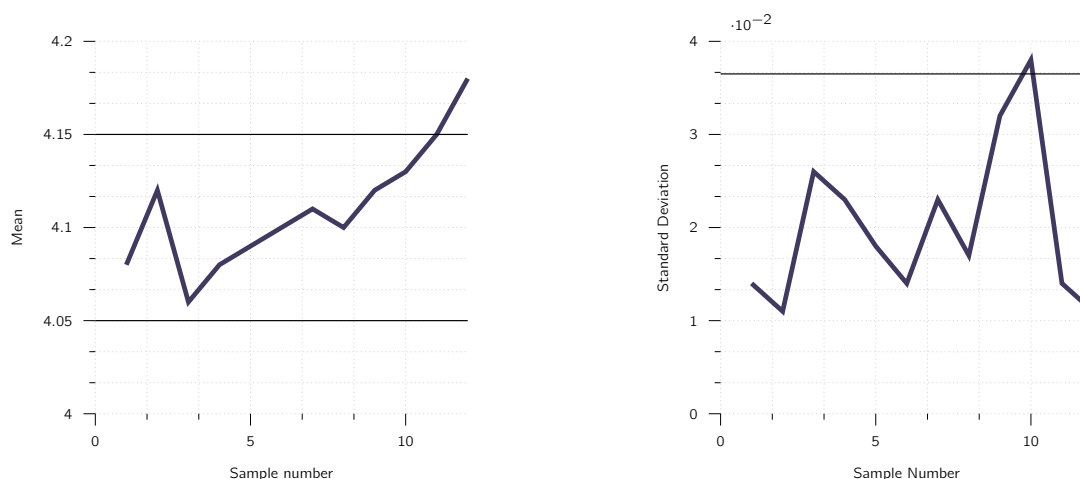


Figure 2.6: Control charts for the mean (upper part of figure) and the standard deviation in the case of the samples on p. 1089

2.5 Quality Control

The ideas on testing can be adapted and extended in various ways to serve basic practical needs in engineering and other fields. We will have a look at this in the remaining sections for some of the most important tasks solvable by statistical methods. As a first such area of problems, we will have a discussion on industrial quality control, a highly successful method used in various industries.

No production process is so perfect that all the products are completely alike. There is always a **small variation** caused by a great number of small, uncontrollable factors and must therefore be regarded as a chance variation. It is important to make sure the products have required values.³⁵ For this purpose one makes a test of the hypothesis that the points have the required property, say, $\mu = \mu_0$, where μ_0 is a required value. If this is done after an entire lot has been produced,³⁶ the test will tell us how good or how bad the products are, but it is obviously too late to alter undesirable results. It is much better to test during the production run. This is done at regular intervals of time³⁷ and is called quality control. Each time a sample of the same size is taken, in practice 3 to 10 times. If the hypothesis is rejected, we stop the production and look for the cause of the trouble.

If we stop the production process even though it is progressing properly, we make a **Type I error**. If we do not stop the process even though something is not in order, we make a **Type II error**. The result of each test is marked in graphical form on what is called a **control chart**.

This was proposed by W. A. Shewhart³⁸ in 1924 and makes quality control particularly effective.



³⁸Walter Andrew Shewhart (1891 - 1967) was an American physicist, engineer and statistician. He is sometimes also known as the grandfather of statistical quality control and also related to the Shewhart cycle.

³⁵for example, length, strength, or whatever property may be essential in a particular case

³⁶for example, a lot of 100,000 levels.

³⁷for example, every hour or half-hour

2.5.1 Control Chart for the Mean

An illustration and example of a control chart is given in the left part of **Fig. 2.6**. This control chart for the mean shows the **lower control limit** LCL, the **center control line** CL, and the **upper control limit** UCL. The two (2) control limits correspond to the critical values c_1 and c_2 . As soon as a sample mean falls outside the range between the control limits, we reject the hypothesis and assert that the production process is **out of control**. That is,

we assert that there has been a shift in process level and action is called for whenever a point exceeds the limits.

If we choose control limits that are too loose, we won't be able to detect process shifts. On the other hand, if we choose control limits that are too tight, we shall be unable to run the process because of frequent searches for nonexistent trouble. The usual significance level is $\alpha = 1\%$. Based on what we learned previously we see that in the case of the normal distribution the corresponding control limits (for $\alpha = 0.01$) for the mean are:

$$\text{LCL} = \mu_0 - 2.58 \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}} \quad \text{and} \quad \text{UCL} = \mu_0 + 2.58 \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}}. \quad (2.25)$$

Of course, it is worth mentioning here, σ is assumed to be **known**. If σ is unknown, we may compute the standard deviations of the first 20 or 30 samples and take their arithmetic mean as an approximation of σ .

Additional, more subtle controls are often used in industry. For instance, one observes the motions of the sample means above and below the centre-line, which should happen frequently. Accordingly, long runs³⁹ of means all above, or all below the centring could indicate trouble.

³⁹conventionally of length 7 or more

Sample Number	Sample Values					\bar{x}	s	R
1	4.06	4.08	4.08	4.08	4.10	4.080	0.014	0.04
2	4.10	4.10	4.12	4.12	4.12	4.112	0.011	0.02
3	4.06	4.06	4.08	4.10	4.12	4.084	0.026	0.06
4	4.06	4.08	4.08	4.10	4.12	4.088	0.023	0.06
5	4.08	4.10	4.12	4.12	4.12	4.108	0.018	0.04
6	4.08	4.10	4.10	4.10	4.12	4.100	0.014	0.04
7	4.06	4.08	4.08	4.10	4.12	4.088	0.023	0.06
8	4.08	4.08	4.10	4.10	4.12	4.096	0.017	0.04
9	4.06	4.08	4.10	4.12	4.14	4.100	0.032	0.08
10	4.06	4.08	4.10	4.12	4.16	4.104	0.038	0.10
11	4.12	4.14	4.14	4.14	4.16	4.140	0.014	0.04
12	4.14	4.14	4.16	4.16	4.16	4.152	0.011	0.02

Table 2.3: Twelve samples of five (5) values each (diameter of small cylinders, measured in mm)

2.5.2 Control Chart for the Variance

In addition to the mean, one often controls the variance, the standard deviation, or the range. To set up a control chart for the variance in the case of a normal distribution, we may employ the method we learned previously for determining control limits.

It is customary to use only one (1) control limit, namely, an upper control limit. Now we know the relation,

$$S^2 = \sigma_0^2 \frac{Y}{(n-1)},$$

where, because of our normality assumption, the random variable Y has a chi-square distribution with $n - 1$ degrees of freedom. Hence the desired control limit is

$$UCL = \left(\frac{\sigma^2 c}{n-1} \right) \quad (2.26)$$

where c is obtained from the equation

$$P(Y > c) = \alpha \quad \text{and} \quad P(Y \leq c) = 1 - \alpha$$

and the table of the chi-square distribution (given in Appendix) with $n - 1$ degrees of freedom. Here α (5% or 1%, say) is the probability that in a properly running process an observed value s^2 of S^2 is greater than the upper control limit.

If we wanted a control chart for the variance with both an upper control limit UCL and a lower control limit LCL, these limits would be

$$LCL = \frac{\sigma^2 c_1}{n-1} \quad \text{and} \quad UCL = \frac{\sigma^2 c_2}{n-1}. \quad (2.27)$$

where c_1 and c_2 are obtained from **Table A.8** to **Table A.10** with $n - 1$ d.f., and the equations

$$P(Y \leq c_1) = \frac{\alpha}{2} \quad \text{and} \quad P(Y \leq c_2) = 1 - \frac{\alpha}{2}.$$

2.5.3 Control Chart for the Standard Deviation

To set up a control chart for the standard deviation, we need an **upper control limit**.

$$UCL = \frac{\sigma \sqrt{c}}{\sqrt{n-1}}, \quad (2.28)$$

obtained from Eq. (2.26). For example, in **Table 2.3** we have $n = 5$. Assuming that the corresponding population is **normal** with standard deviation $\sigma = 0.02$ and choosing $\alpha = 1\%$, we obtain from the equation:

$$P(Y \leq c) = 1 - \alpha = 99\%$$

and with 4 d.f. the critical value $c = 13.28$ and from Eq. (2.28) the corresponding value:

$$UCL = \frac{0.02 \sqrt{13.28}}{\sqrt{4}} = 0.0365,$$

which is shown in the lower part of **Fig. 2.6**. A control chart for the standard deviation with both an upper and a lower control limit is obtained from Eq. (2.27).

2.5.4 Control Chart for the Range

Instead of the variance or standard deviation, one often controls the **range** R , where R is the largest sample value minus smallest sample value. It can be shown that in the case of the normal distribution, the standard deviation σ is proportional to the expectation of the random variable R^* for which R is an observed value, say, $\sigma = \lambda_n E(R^*)$ where the factor of proportionality λ_n depends on the sample size n and has the values: As R depends on two (2) sample values **only**, it

n	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
$\lambda_n E(R^*)$	0.89	0.59	0.49	0.43	0.40	0.37	0.35	0.34	0.32
n	12	14	16	18	20	30	40	50	
$\lambda_n E(R^*)$	0.31	0.29	0.28	0.28	0.27	0.25	0.23	0.22	

gives less information about a sample than s does. Clearly, the larger the sample size n is, the more information we lose in using R instead of s .

A practical rule is to use s when n is larger than 10.

Information: Application of Quality Control in Manufacturing

It is important to reiterate that quality control charts are not theoretical tools. Many industries today, from healthcare finance to manufacturing, use them to shape manufacturing practicalities. Let's explore their applications in two (2) critical areas:

- Mold design and,
- Mold manufacturing.

Mold Design

In manufacturing, accuracy is essential, especially when it comes to mold design. This is why, the slightest variation from the set specifications may result in delivering a substandard product. This is whereby control charts assist in monitoring the designs for consistency by tracking the essential dimensions and tolerance during the diverse stages of the design process.

During these crucial processes, various control charts can help engineers easily see whether a pattern is evident and determine if there is a problem with the measurement. For example, if the dimensions of a mold cavity lie outside the control limit more often, it will mean a need to alter something. Such an approach is helpful to avoid expensive mistakes and to ensure molds are built for proper part production.

Mold Manufacturing

Therefore, when it comes to the finalization of the mold design, it is time to move on to the next level, which is manufacturing. Here, quality control charts are used effectively to keep the secured quality of the product along with a healthy flow of the process.

Through the regulation of parameters such as temperature, pressure, and cycle time, manufacturers are able to note any variance in the best conditions. For example, if the temperature of the molten material which is used in injection molding remains above the upper control limit, then it will cause some problems in the finished mold. This matter would be detected immediately by a control chart so that operators can change the temperature and avoid other difficulties.

There are so many benefits that can be obtained:

Reduce scrap and rework Control charts allow one to find out and correct the issues that result in the development of defective molds before more of them are developed and reduce on the amount of time and effort wasted.

Improve product quality This makes the production of molds to be more consistent since process monitoring is done frequently and continually hence fulfilling the customers' expectations.

Increase efficiency Through the control of these parameters, control charts facilitate the improvement of flow on processes by minimizing the cycle time. Enhance customer satisfaction: Quality molds that arrive on time and at a lower cost increase customer satisfaction, meaning more business.

2.6 Acceptance Sampling

Acceptance sampling is usually done when products leave the factory.⁴⁰ The standard procedure in acceptance sampling is that a producer supplies to a consumer⁴¹ a lot of N items.⁴² The decision to accept or reject the lot is made by determining the number x of **defectives** in a sample of size n from the lot. The lot is accepted if $x \leq c$, where c is called the **acceptance number**, giving the allowable number of defectives. If $x > c$, the consumer rejects the lot. Clearly, producer and consumer must agree on a certain **sampling plan** giving n and c .

⁴⁰This is done in some cases even within the factory.

⁴¹a buyer or wholesaler

⁴²a carton of screws, for instance

From the hyper-geometric distribution we see that the event A : “Accept the lot” has probability of:

$$P(A) = P(X \leq c) = \sum_{x=0}^c \binom{M}{x} \binom{N-M}{n-x} / \binom{N}{n} \quad (2.29)$$

where M is the number of defectives in a lot of N items. In terms of the **fraction defective** $\theta = M/N$ we can write Eq. (2.29) as:

$$P(A; \theta) = \sum_{x=0}^c \binom{N\theta}{x} \binom{N-N\theta}{n-x} / \binom{N}{n}. \quad (2.30)$$

$P(A; \theta)$ can assume $n+1$ values corresponding to $\theta = 0, 1/N, 2/N, \dots, N/N$; here, n and c are fixed. A monotone smooth curve through these points is called the **operating characteristic curve (OC curve)** of the sampling plan considered.

Information: Sampling Plan

Suppose that certain tool bits are packaged 20 to a box, and the following sampling plan is used.

A sample of two tool bits is drawn, and the corresponding box is accepted if and only if both bits in the sample are good.

In this case, $N = 20$, $n = 2$, $c = 0$, and Eq. (2.30) takes the form (a factor 2 drops out)

$$\begin{aligned} P(A; \theta) &= \binom{20\theta}{0} \binom{20-20\theta}{2} / \binom{20}{2} \\ &= \frac{(20-20\theta)(19-20\theta)}{380} \end{aligned}$$

The values of $P(A, \theta)$ for $\theta = 0, 1/20, 2/20, \dots, 20/20$ and the resulting OC curve are shown below.

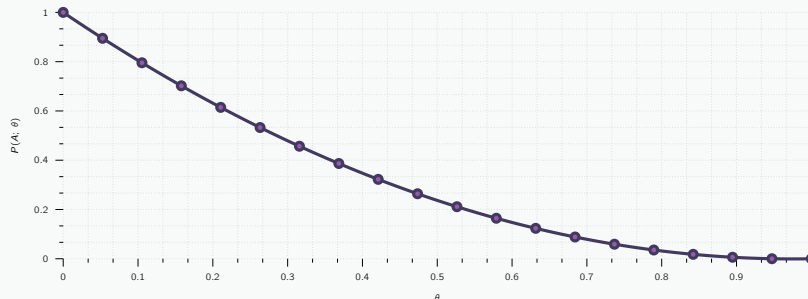


Figure 2.7: OC curve of the sampling plan $n = 2$ and $c = 0$ for lots of size $N = 20$.

In most practical cases θ will be small (less than 10%). Then if we take small samples compared to N , we can approximate Eq. (2.30) by the Poisson distribution; therefore

$$P(A; \theta) \sim e^{-\mu} \sum_{x=0}^e \frac{\mu^x}{x!} \quad \text{where} \quad \mu = n\theta. \quad (2.31)$$

Information: Sampling Plan using Poisson

Suppose that for large lots the following sampling plan is used. A sample of size $n = 20$ is taken. If it contains not more than one defective, the lot is accepted. If the sample contains two or more defectives, the lot is rejected. In this plan, we obtain from Eq. (2.31)

$$P(A; \theta) \sim e^{-20\theta} (1 + 20\theta) \quad \blacksquare$$

The corresponding OC curve is shown below

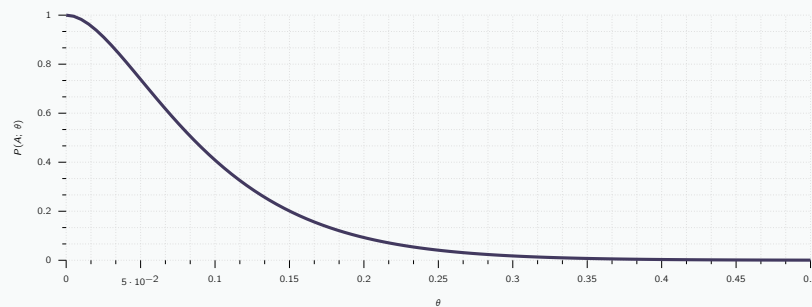


Figure 2.8: The OC curve with Poisson process applied to it.

2.6.1 Errors in Acceptance Sampling

We show how acceptance sampling fits into general test theory and what this means from a **practical** point of view. The producer wants the probability α of rejecting an acceptable lot⁴³ to be small. θ_0 is called the **acceptable quality level** (AQL). Similarly, the consumer wants the probability β of accepting an unacceptable lot⁴⁴ to be small.

⁴³a lot for which θ does not exceed a certain number θ_0 on which the two (2) parties agree

⁴⁴a lot for which θ is greater than or equal to some θ_1

In this scenario, θ_1 is called the **lot tolerance percent defective** or rejectable quality level (RQL). α is called **producer's risk** which would correspond to a Type I error discussed previously. β is called **consumer's risk** and corresponds to a Type II error. It can be shown that for large lots we can choose $\theta_0, \theta_1 (> \theta_0), \alpha, \beta$ and then determine n and c such that the OC curve runs very close to those recorded points. **Table 2.4** shows the analogy between acceptance sampling and hypothesis testing.

2.6.2 Rectification

Rectification of a **rejected** lot means that the lot is inspected item by item and all defectives are removed and replaced by non-defective items.⁴⁵ If a production turns out $100\theta\%$ defectives, then in K lots of size N each, $KN\theta$ of the KN items are **defectives**.

⁴⁵This may be too expensive if the lot is cheap. If this were the case, the lot may be sold at a cut-rate price or scrapped.

Acceptance Sampling	Hypothesis Testing
Acceptable quality level(AQL) $\theta = \theta_0$	Hypothesis $\theta = \theta_0$
Lot tolerance percent defectives(LTPD) $\theta = \theta_1$	Alternative $\theta = \theta_1$
Allowable number of defectives c	Critical value c
Producer's risk α of rejecting a lot with $\theta \leq \theta_0$	Probability α of making a Type I error (significance level)
Consumer's risk β of accepting a lot with $\theta \geq \theta_1$	Probability β of making a Type II error

Table 2.4: Acceptance Sampling and Hypothesis Testing

Now $KP(A; \theta)$ of these lots are accepted. These contain $KPN\theta$ defectives, whereas the rejected and rectified lots contain **no** defectives, because of the rectification. Hence after the rectification the fraction defective in all K lots equals $KPN\theta/KN$. This is called the **average outgoing quality** (AQO), which is expressed as:

$$AOQ(\theta) = \theta P(A; \theta). \quad (2.32)$$

Fig. 2.9 shows an example. Since $AOQ(0) = 0$ and $P(A; 1) = 0$, the AOQ curve has a maximum at some $\theta = \theta^*$, giving the **average outgoing quality limit** (AOQL). This is the worst average quality that may be expected to be accepted under rectification.

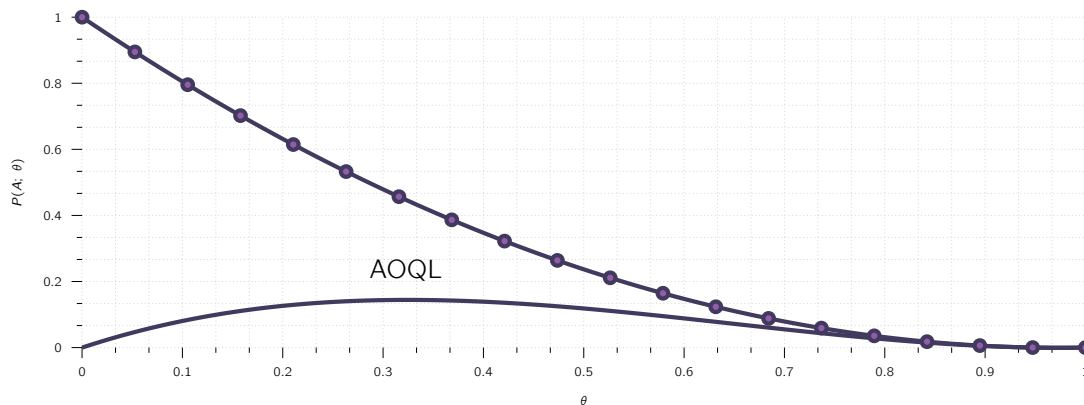


Figure 2.9: OC curve and AOQ curve for the sampling plan.

Information: Application of Acceptance Sampling in Industry

The applications are diverse and span numerous industries, each with its unique quality control requirements and challenges.

Manufacturing Widely used for evaluating the quality of raw materials, components, and finished products. Examples include inspecting batches of electronic components, assessing the dimensional accuracy of machined parts, or verifying the structural integrity of construction materials.

Electronics The electronics industry relies heavily on it to ensure the quality and reliability of components, circuits, and devices. Common applications include inspecting printed circuit boards for defects, testing the performance of semiconductors, and evaluating the functionality of electronic assemblies.

Pharmaceuticals Plays a critical role in ensuring the safety and efficacy of drugs and medical devices. Companies employ acceptance sampling techniques to inspect batches of raw materials, active ingredients, and finished pharmaceutical products, verifying compliance with stringent quality standards and regulatory requirements.

2.7 Goodness of Fit

⁴⁶In literature, this method also means χ^2 -Test.

Historical Anecdote

During the 19th century, statistical analytical methods were mainly applied to biological data and it was customary for researchers to assume observations followed a **normal distribution**, such as Sir George Airy and Mansfield Merriman, whose works were criticized by Karl Pearson in his 1900 paper.

At the end of the 19th century, Pearson noticed the existence of significant skewness within some biological observations. To model the observations regardless of being normal or skewed, Pearson, in a series of articles published from 1893 to 1916, devised the Pearson distribution, a family of continuous probability distributions, which includes the normal distribution and many skewed distributions, and proposed a method of statistical analysis consisting of using the Pearson distribution to model the observation and performing a test of goodness of fit to determine how well the model really fits to the observations.

To test for goodness of fit⁴⁶ means that we wish to test that a certain function $F(x)$ is the distribution function of a distribution from which we have a sample x_1, \dots, x_n . Then we test whether the **sample distribution function** $\tilde{F}(x)$ defined as:

$$\tilde{F}(x) = \text{Sum of the relative frequencies of all sample values } x_j \text{ not exceeding } x, \quad (2.33)$$

fits $\tilde{F}(x)$ **sufficiently well**. If this is so, we shall **accept** the hypothesis that $\tilde{F}(x)$ is the distribution function of the population; else, we shall **reject the hypothesis**.

This test is of considerable practical importance, and it differs in character from the tests for parameters (μ, σ^2 , etc.) considered thus far.

To test in that fashion, we have to know how much $\tilde{F}(x)$ can differ from $F(x)$ if the hypothesis is **true**. Hence we must first introduce a quantity which measures the deviation of $\tilde{F}(x)$ from $F(x)$, and we must know the probability distribution of this quantity under the assumption that the hypothesis is true.

Then we proceed as follows.

We determine a number, let's use c , such that, if the hypothesis is **true**, a deviation greater than c has a small preassigned probability. If, nevertheless, a deviation greater than c occurs, we have reason to doubt that the hypothesis is true and we reject it. On the other hand, if the deviation does **NOT** exceed c , so that $\tilde{F}(x)$ approximates $F(x)$ sufficiently well, we accept the hypothesis.

Of course, if we accept the hypothesis, this means that we have insufficient evidence to reject it, and this does not exclude the possibility that there are other functions that would not be rejected in the test.

In this respect the situation is quite similar to hypothesis testing we talked previously.

The following text-block shows a test of that type, which was introduced by *R. A. Fisher*. This test is justified by the fact that if the hypothesis is true, then χ_0^2 is an observed value of a random variable whose distribution function approaches that of the chi-square distribution with $K - 1$ degrees of freedom⁴⁷ as n approaches infinity. The requirement that at least five (5) sample values lie in each interval results from the fact that for finite n that random variable has only approximately a chi-square distribution.

If the sample is so small that the requirement cannot be satisfied, one may continue with the test, but then use the result **with caution**.

⁴⁷or $K - r - 1$ degrees of freedom if r parameters are estimated.

Theory 2.23: Chi-square Test for $F(x)$ being the Distribution Function of a Population

1. Subdivide the x -axis into n intervals I_1, \dots, I_n such that each interval contains at least five (5) values of the given sample x_1, \dots, x_n .

Determine the number b_j of sample values in the interval I_j , where $j = 1, \dots, K$. If a sample value lies at a common boundary point of two (2) intervals, add 0.5 to each of the two (2) corresponding b_j .

2. Using $F(x)$, calculate the probability p_j that the random variable X under consideration assumes any value in the interval I_j , where $j = 1, \dots, K$. Then, calculate

$$e_j = np_j.$$

This is the number of sample values **theoretically expected** in I_j if the hypothesis is true.

3. Compute the deviation:

$$\chi_0^2 = \sum_{j=1}^K \frac{(b_j - e_j)^2}{e_j}.$$

4. Choose a significance level such as 5%, 1%, or the like.

5. Determine the solution c of the equation

$$P(\chi^2 \leq c) = 1 - \alpha.$$

from the table of the chi-square distribution with $K - 1$ degrees of freedom **Table A.8** to **Table A.10**.

If r parameters of $F(x)$ are unknown and their maximum likelihood estimates are used, then use $K - r - 1$ degrees of freedom, instead of $K - 1$.

If $\chi_0^2 \leq c$, accept the hypothesis. If $\chi_0^2 > c$, reject the hypothesis.

Exercise 2.7: Printed Circuit Boards

The number of defects in printed circuit board is hypothesized to follow a Poisson distribution. A random sample of $n = 60$ printed boards have been collected, and following number of defects were observed

Number of Defects	Observed Frequency
0	32
1	15
2	9
3	4

Solution

The mean of the assumed Poisson distribution in this example is unknown and must be estimated from the sample data. The estimate of the mean number of defects per board is the sample average, that is:

$$(32 \times 0 + 15 \times 1 + 9 \times 2 + 4 \times 3) / 60 = 0.75$$

From the Poisson distribution with parameter 0.75, we may compute p_i , the theoretical, hypothesized probability associated with the i^{th} class interval. Since each class interval corresponds to a particular number of defects, we may find the p_i as follows:

$$p_1 = P(X = 0) = \frac{e^{-0.75}(0.75)^0}{0!} = 0.472$$

$$p_2 = P(X = 1) = \frac{e^{-0.75}(0.75)^1}{1!} = 0.354$$

$$p_3 = P(X = 2) = \frac{e^{-0.75}(0.75)^2}{2!} = 0.133$$

$$p_4 = P(X \geq 3) = 1 - (p_1 + p_2 + p_3) = 0.041$$

The expected frequencies are computed by multiplying the sample size $n = 60$ times the probabilities p_i . That is, $e_i = np_i$. The expected frequencies follow:

Number of Defects	Probability	Expected Frequency
0	0.472	28.32
1	0.354	21.24
2	0.133	7.98
3 (or more)	0.041	2.46

Since the expected frequency in the last cell is less than 3, we combine the last two cells:

NOTE: Categories with expected frequency is combined because the Chi-square test would not work if the frequency is less than 5. If the sample size is too small the chi-square value is over-estimated and if it is too large chi-square value is under-estimated. Hence why we combine with the category with the lowest frequency.

Since the expected frequency in the last cell is less than 3, we combine the last two cells:

Number of Defects	Probability	Expected Frequency
0	32	28.32
1	15	21.24
2 (or more)	13	10.44

Now, the chi-square test will have $k - p - 1 = 3 - 1 - 1 = 1$ degree of freedom, because the mean of the Poisson distribution was estimated from the data.

The hypothesis-testing procedure may now be applied using $\alpha = 0.05$,

1. The variable of interest is the form of the distribution of defects in printed circuitboards.
2. θ_0 The form of the distribution of defects is Poisson.
3. θ_1 The form of the distribution of defects is not Poisson.
4. Test statistic is:

$$\chi_0^2 = \sum_{j=1}^k \frac{(b_j - e_j)^2}{e_j}$$

5. Reject H_0 if $\chi_0^2 > \chi_{0.05,1}^2 = 3.84$.
6. Time to calculate χ_0^2 :

$$\chi_0^2 = \frac{(32 - 28.32)^2}{28.32} + \frac{(15 - 21.24)^2}{21.24} + \frac{(13 - 10.44)^2}{10.44} = 2.94$$

7. As $\chi_0^2 = 2.94 < \chi_{0.05,1}^2 = 3.84$, we are unable to reject the null hypothesis that the distribution of defects in printed circuit boards is Poisson.

2.8 Non-parametric Tests

Non-parametric tests,⁴⁸ are valid for **any** distribution and are used in cases when the kind of distribution is **unknown**, or is known but such that no tests specifically designed for it are available.

⁴⁸also called distribution-free tests.

In this section we shall explain the basic idea of these tests, which are based on **order statistics** and are rather simple.

If there is a choice, then tests designed for a specific distribution generally give better results than do non-parametric tests.

We shall discuss two (2) tests in terms of typical examples. In deriving the distributions used in the test, it is essential that the distributions, from which we sample, are **continuous**.

Non-parametric tests can also be derived for discrete distributions, but this is slightly more complicated.

Exercise 2.8: Testing for Arbitrary Trend

A certain machine is used for cutting lengths of wire. The five (5) successive pieces had the lengths:

29 31 28 30 32.

Using this sample, test the hypothesis that there is no trend, that is, the machine does not have the tendency to produce longer and longer pieces or shorter and shorter pieces. Assume that the type of machine suggests the alternative that there is positive trend, that is, there is the tendency of successive pieces to get longer.

Solution

We count the number of **transpositions** in the sample, that is, the number of times a larger value precedes a smaller value:

29 precedes 281 transposition,
31 precedes 28 and 302 transpositions.

The remaining three (3) sample values follow in ascending order. Hence in the sample there are $1 + 2 = 3$ transpositions. We now consider the random variable

T = Number of transpositions.

If the hypothesis is true (i.e., no trend), then each of the $5! = 120$ permutations of five (5) elements 1 2 3 4 5 has the same probability ($1/120$). We arrange these permutations according to their number of transpositions. From this we obtain

$$P(T \leq 3) = \frac{1}{120} + \frac{4}{120} + \frac{9}{120} + \frac{15}{120} = \frac{29}{120} = 24\%.$$

We accept the hypothesis because we have observed an event that has a relatively large probability if the hypothesis is true.

Values of the distribution function of T in the case of no trend are shown in Table 12. App. 5. For instance, if $n = 3$, then $F(0) = 0.167$, $F(1) = 0.900$, $F(2) = 1 - 0.167$. If $n = 4$, then $F(0) = 0.042$, $F(1) = 0.167$, $F(2) = 0.375$, $F(3) = 1 - 0.375$, $F(4) = 1 - 0.167$, and so on.

Our method and those values refer to continuous distributions. Theoretically, we may then expect that all the values of a sample are different. Practically, some sample values may still be equal, because of rounding: If m values are equal, and $m(m-1)/4$ (= mean value of the transpositions in the case of the permutations of m elements), that is, $\frac{1}{2}$ for each pair of equal values, $\frac{1}{2}$ for each triple, etc ■

Part II

Solving Partial Differential Equations

Chapter 3

Fourier Analysis

Table of Contents

3.1	Fourier Series	73
3.2	Functions with Arbitrary Periods	78
3.3	Forced Oscillations	83
3.4	Approximation by Trigonometric Polynomials	85
3.5	Sturm–Liouville Problems	88
3.6	Generalised Fourier Series	91
3.7	Fourier Integrals	93
3.8	Cosine and Sine Transforms	96
3.9	Fourier Transform: Discrete and Fast	98

3.1 Fourier Series

Fourier series are **infinite series** which represent periodic functions in terms of cosines and sines. As such, Fourier series are vital to engineers, physicists, applied mathematician and many other sub-disciplines. To define Fourier series, we first need to visit some fundamentals.

3.1.1 Important Definitions

A function $f(x)$ is called a **periodic function** if $f(x)$ is defined for all real x , except possibly at some points, and if there is some positive number p , called a **period** of $f(x)$, such that:

$$f(x + p) = f(x) \quad \text{for all } x \quad (3.1)$$

The graph of a periodic function has the characteristic that it can be obtained by periodic repetition of its graph in any interval of length p which can be seen in **Fig. 3.1**.

The smallest positive period is often called the **fundamental period**.

Familiar periodic functions are the cosine, sine, tangent,¹ and cotangent. Examples of functions that are **non-periodic** are $x, x^2, x^3, e^x, \cos x$, and $\ln x$, to mention just a few.

If $f(x)$ has period p , it also has the period $2p$ as Eq. (3.1) implies:

$$\begin{aligned} f(x+2p) &= f(x+p+p) = f(x+p) = f(x) & n &= 1, 2, 3, \dots \\ f(x+np) &= f(x) & \text{for all } x. \end{aligned}$$

Furthermore if $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ have period p , then $af(x) + bg(x)$ with any constants a, b also has the period p . Our problem in the first few sections will be the representation of various functions $f(x)$ of period 2π in terms of the simple functions:

$$1, \quad \cos x, \quad \sin x, \quad \cos 2x, \quad \sin 2x, \dots, \quad \cos nx, \quad \sin nx, \dots \quad (3.2)$$

All these functions have the period 2π and form the **trigonometric system**. **Fig. 3.2** shows the first few of them.²



Figure 3.1: An example of a periodic function with a period of T .

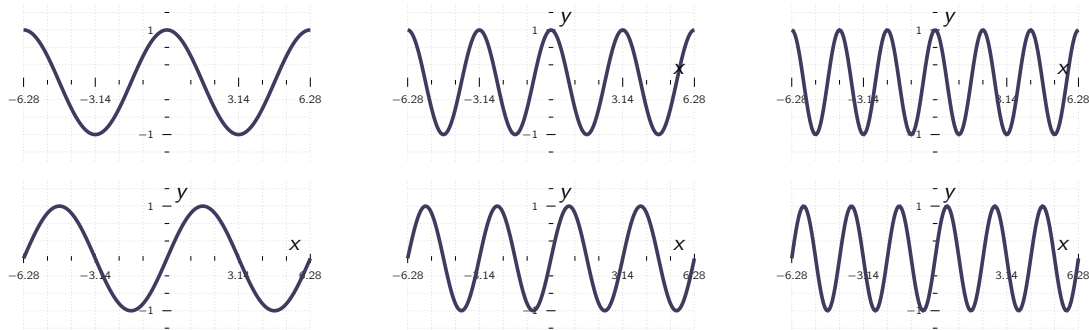


Figure 3.2: Cosine and sine functions having the period 2π (the first few members of the trigonometric system Eq. (3.2), except for the constant 1)

The series to be obtained will be a **trigonometric series**, that is, a series of the form

$$\begin{aligned} &= a_0 + a_1 \cos x + b_1 \sin x + a_2 \cos 2x + b_2 \sin 2x + \cdots \\ &= a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (a_n \cos nx + b_n \sin nx) . \end{aligned} \quad (3.3)$$

where $a_0, a_1, b_1, a_2, b_2, \dots$ are constants, called the **coefficients** of the series. We see that each term has the period 2π .

If the coefficients are such that the **series converges**, its sum will be a function of period 2π .

Expressions such as Eq. (3.3) will **occur frequently** in Fourier analysis. To compare the expression on the RHS with that on the LHS, simply write the terms in the summation. Convergence of one side implies convergence of the other and the sums will be the same.

Let us look into this in a bit more detail and assume $f(x)$ is a given function of period 2π and is such that it can be represented by a series Eq. (3.3). This implies, Eq. (3.3) converges and has the sum $f(x)$. Then, using the equality sign, we write:

$$f(x) = a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (a_n \cos nx + b_n \sin nx) \quad (3.4)$$

and call Eq. (3.4) the **Fourier series** of $f(x)$. We shall prove that in this case the coefficients of Eq. (3.4) are the so-called **Fourier coefficients** of $f(x)$, given by the **Euler formulas**:

$$\begin{aligned} a_0 &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(x) dx, \\ a_n &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(x) \cos nx dx & n = 1, 2, \dots, \\ b_n &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(x) \sin nx dx & n = 1, 2, \dots. \end{aligned} \quad (3.5)$$

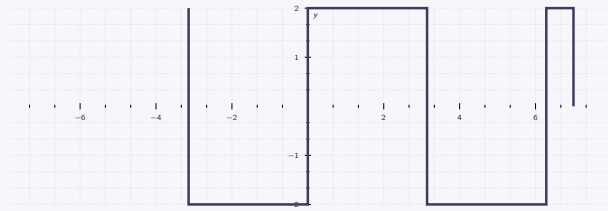
Before we derive the Euler formulas in Eq. (3.5), let us consider how Eq. (3.4) and Eq. (3.5) are applied in this important basic example. Be on alert, as the way we approach and solve this example will be the technique you will use for other functions.

The integration is a little different from what you are accustomed in calculus due to the presence of n .

Exercise 3.1: Periodic Rectangular Waves

Find the Fourier coefficients of the periodic function, which these kind of functions occurs **external** forces acting on mechanical systems, electromotive forces in electric circuits, etc., $f(x)$ in Fig. 3.3. The formula is

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} -k & \text{if } -\pi < x < 0 \\ k & \text{if } 0 < x < \pi \end{cases} \quad \text{and} \quad f(x + 2\pi) = f(x) \quad (3.6)$$

Figure 3.3: The given function $f(x)$ in Example

Note: The value of $f(x)$ at a single point does not affect the integral; hence we can leave $f(x)$ undefined at $x = 0$ and $x = \pm\pi$.

Solution

From Euler equations, we obtain $a_0 = 0$.

This can also be seen without integration by looking at the plot, as the area under the curve of $f(x)$ between $-\pi$ and π is zero. From the Euler equations, we obtain the coefficients a_1, a_2, \dots of the cosine terms. As $f(x)$ is given by two (2) expressions, the integrals from $-\pi$ to π split into the following two (2) integrals:

$$\begin{aligned} a_n &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(x) \cos nx \, dx = \frac{1}{\pi} \left[\int_{-\pi}^0 (-k) \cos nx \, dx + \int_0^{\pi} k \cos nx \, dx \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{\pi} \left[-k \frac{\sin nx}{n} \Big|_{-\pi}^0 + k \frac{\sin nx}{n} \Big|_0^{\pi} \right] = 0 \end{aligned}$$

As $\sin nx = 0$ at $-\pi, 0$, and π for all $n = 1, 2, \dots$. We can see all these cosine coefficients are zero. That is, the Fourier series of Eq. (3.6) has no cosine terms, just sine terms, it is a **Fourier sine series** with coefficients b_1, b_2, \dots obtained from the Euler equations:

$$\begin{aligned} b_n &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(x) \sin nx \, dx = \frac{1}{\pi} \left[\int_{-\pi}^0 (-k) \sin nx \, dx + \int_0^{\pi} k \sin nx \, dx \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{\pi} \left[k \frac{\cos nx}{n} \Big|_{-\pi}^0 - k \frac{\cos nx}{n} \Big|_0^{\pi} \right] \end{aligned}$$

As $\cos(-\alpha) = \cos \alpha$ and $\cos 0 = 1$, this gives us:

$$b_n = \frac{k}{n\pi} [\cos 0 - \cos(-n\pi) - \cos n\pi + \cos 0] = \frac{2k}{n\pi} (1 - \cos n\pi).$$

Now, $\cos \pi = -1$, $\cos 2\pi = 1$, $\cos 3\pi = -1$, etc.; in general,

$$\cos n\pi = \begin{cases} -1 & \text{for odd } n, \\ 1 & \text{for even } n, \end{cases} \quad \text{and thus} \quad 1 - \cos n\pi = \begin{cases} 2 & \text{for odd } n, \\ 0 & \text{for even } n. \end{cases}$$

Hence the Fourier coefficients b_0 of our function are

$$b_1 = \frac{4k}{\pi}, \quad b_2 = 0, \quad b_3 = \frac{4k}{3\pi}, \quad b_4 = 0, \quad b_5 = \frac{4k}{5\pi}, \dots$$

Since the a_n are zero, the Fourier series of $f(x)$ is

$$\frac{4k}{\pi} \left(\sin x + \frac{1}{2} \sin 3x + \frac{1}{3} \sin 5x + \dots \right).$$

Their graphs in Fig. 3.4 seem to indicate that the series is convergent and has the sum $f(x)$, the given function. We notice that $x = 0$ and $x = \pi$, the points of discontinuity of $f(x)$, all partial sums have the value zero, the arithmetic mean of the limits $-k$ and k of our function, at these points. This is typical. Furthermore, assuming that $f(x)$ is the sum of the series and setting $x = \pi/2$, we have

$$f\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right) = k = \frac{4\pi}{\pi} \left(1 - \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{5} - \dots \right).$$

Thus

$$1 - \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{5} - \frac{1}{7} + \dots = \frac{\pi}{4}.$$

This is a famous result obtained by Leibniz in 1673 from geometric considerations. It illustrates that the values of various series with constant terms can be obtained by evaluating Fourier series at specific points.

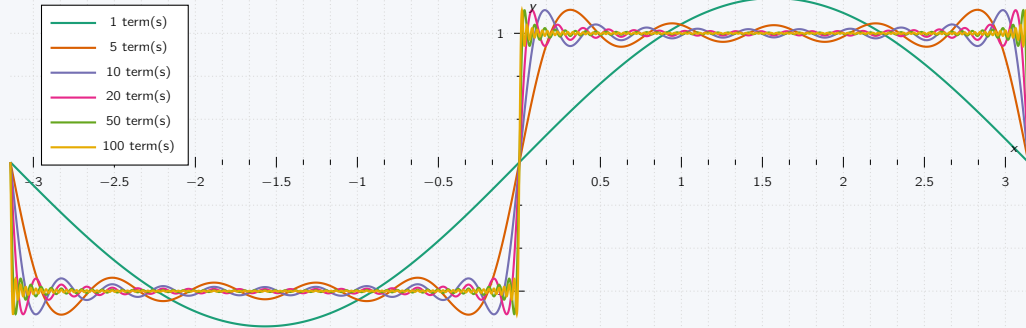


Figure 3.4: The consecutive sums of the corresponding Fourier series.

3.1.2 Deriving the Euler Formulas

The main principle behind Euler formulas Eq. (3.5) is the **orthogonality** of Eq. (3.2), a concept of basic importance, as follows. Let us generalise the concept of inner product³ to functions using the following theorem.

³a concept which we have covered in **Higher Mathematics I**

Theory 3.24: Orthogonality of Trigonometric Identities

The trigonometric system Eq. (3.2) is orthogonal on the interval,⁴ $-\pi \leq x \leq \pi$

The integral of the product of any two functions in Eq. (3.3) over that interval is 0, so that for any integers n and m ,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(a)} \quad & \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \cos nx \cos mx \, dx = 0 & (n \neq m) \\ \text{(b)} \quad & \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \sin nx \sin mx \, dx = 0 & (n \neq m) \\ \text{(c)} \quad & \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \sin nx \cos mx \, dx = 0 & (n \neq m \text{ or } n = m). \end{aligned} \quad (3.7)$$

⁴hence also on $0 \leq x \leq 2\pi$ or any other interval of length 2π because of periodicity.

3.1.3 Convergence and Sum of a Fourier Series

The class of functions that can be represented by Fourier series is surprisingly large and general. Sufficient conditions valid in most applications are as follows.

Theory 3.25: Representation by a Fourier Series

Let $f(x)$ be periodic with period 2π and **piecewise continuous** in the interval $-\pi \leq x \leq \pi$. Furthermore, let $f(x)$ have a LHS derivative and a RHS derivative at each point of that interval.

Then the Fourier series Eq. (3.4) of $f(x)$, with coefficients Eq. (3.5) converges. Its sum is $f(x)$, except at points x_0 where $f(x)$ is discontinuous. There the sum of the series is the average of the left- and right-hand limit of $f(x)$ at x_0 .

3.2 Functions with Arbitrary Periods

We will now expand our initial basic discussion of Fourier series and cover three (3) topics:

Transition from period 2π to any period $2L$, for the function f , simply by a transformation of scale on the x -axis.

Simplifications Only cosine terms if f is even ("Fourier cosine series"). Only sine terms if f is odd ("Fourier sine series").

Expansion of f given for $0 \leq x \leq L$ in two (2) Fourier series, one having only cosine terms and the other only sine terms ("half-range expansions").

3.2.1 From Period 2π to Any Period $p = 2L$

⁵This choice was deliberate as to have simple formulas.

Clearly, period functions in applications can have any period, not just 2π as in the previous section.⁵ The notation $p = 2L$ for the period is practical as it is used generally as a placeholder for modelling PDE solutions such as the length of a string or the length of a bar conducting heat.

The transition from period 2π to be period $p = 2L$ is effected by a suitable change of scale, as follows.

Let $f(x)$ have a period of $p = 2L$. We can then introduce a new variable, say v , such that $f(x)$, as a function of v , has period 2π . If we set:

$$x = \frac{p}{2\pi}v, \quad \text{which in turn makes} \quad v = \frac{2\pi}{p}x = \frac{\pi}{L}x \quad (3.8)$$

This make $v = \pm\pi$ corresponds to $x = \pm L$. This means f , as a function of v , has period 2π and, therefore, has a Fourier series of the form of:

$$f(x) = f\left(\frac{L}{\pi}v\right) = a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (a_n \cos nv + b_n \sin nv) \quad (3.9)$$

with coefficients obtained from Eq. (3.5):

$$a_0 = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f\left(\frac{L}{\pi}v\right) dv, \quad a_n = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f\left(\frac{L}{\pi}v\right) \cos nv dv, \quad b_n = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f\left(\frac{L}{\pi}v\right) \sin nv dv. \quad (3.10)$$

We could use these formulas directly, but the change to x simplifies calculations as:

$$v = \frac{\pi}{L}x, \quad \text{we have} \quad dv = \frac{\pi}{L}dx \quad (3.11)$$

and we integrate over x from $-L$ to L . Consequently, we obtain for a function $f(x)$ of period $2L$ the Fourier series:

$$f(x) = a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left(a_n \cos \frac{n\pi}{L}x + b_n \sin \frac{n\pi}{L}x \right) \quad (3.12)$$

with the **Fourier coefficients** of $f(x)$ given by the **Euler formulas** (π/L in dx cancels $1/\pi$ in Eq. (3.10))

$$\begin{aligned} a_0 &= \frac{1}{2L} \int_{-L}^L f(x) dx \\ a_n &= \frac{1}{L} \int_{-L}^L f(x) \cos \frac{n\pi x}{L} dx \quad n = 1, 2, \dots \\ b_n &= \frac{1}{L} \int_{-L}^L f(x) \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L} dx \quad n = 1, 2, \dots \end{aligned} \quad (3.13)$$

Similar to the previous section, we continue to call Eq. (3.12) with any coefficients a **trigonometric series**. And we can integrate from 0 to $2L$ or over any other interval of length $p = 2L$.

Exercise 3.2: Periodic Rectangular Waves

Find the Fourier series of the function:

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} -k & \text{if } -2 < x < 0 \\ k & \text{if } 0 < x < 2 \end{cases} \quad p = 2L = 4, \quad L = 2.$$

Solution

Since $L = 2$, we have in Eq. (3.10) $v = \pi x/2$, that is:

$$g(v) = \frac{4k}{\pi} \left(\sin v + \frac{1}{3} \sin 3v + \frac{1}{5} \sin 5v + \dots \right)$$

the present Fourier series:

$$f(x) = \frac{4k}{\pi} \left(\sin \frac{\pi}{2}x + \frac{1}{3} \sin \frac{3\pi}{2}x + \frac{1}{5} \sin \frac{5\pi}{2}x + \dots \right) \quad \blacksquare$$

Exercise 3.3: Half-Wave Rectifier

A sinusoidal voltage $E \sin \omega t$, where t is time, is passed through a half-wave rectifier that clips the negative portion of the wave.

Find the Fourier series of the resulting periodic function:

$$u(t) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } -L < t < 0, \\ E \sin \omega t & \text{if } 0 < t < L \end{cases} \quad p = 2L = \frac{2\pi}{\omega}, \quad L = \frac{\pi}{\omega}.$$

Solution

As $u = 0$ when $-L < t < 0$, we obtain from (6.0), with t instead of x ,

$$a_0 = \frac{\omega}{2\pi} \int_0^{\pi/\omega} E \sin \omega t dt = \frac{E}{\pi}$$

and from Eq. (3.13), with $x = \omega t$ and $y = n\omega t$:

$$a_n = \frac{\omega}{\pi} \int_0^{\pi/\omega} E \sin \omega t \cos n\omega t dt = \frac{\omega E}{2\pi} \int_0^{\pi/\omega} [\sin(1+n)\omega t + \sin(1-n)\omega t] dt$$

If $n = 1$, the integral on the right is zero, and if $n = 2, 3, \dots$, we readily obtain:

$$\begin{aligned} a_n &= \frac{\omega E}{2\pi} \left[-\frac{\cos(1+n)\omega t}{(1+n)\omega} - \frac{\cos(1-n)\omega t}{(1-n)\omega} \right] \Bigg|_0^{\pi/\omega} \\ &= \frac{E}{2\pi} \left(\frac{-\cos(1+n)\pi + 1}{(1+n)} + \frac{-\cos(1-n)\pi + 1}{(1-n)} \right) \end{aligned}$$

If n is odd, this is equal to zero, and for even n we have:

$$a_n = \frac{E}{2\pi} \left(\frac{2}{1+n} + \frac{2}{1-n} \right) = -\frac{2E}{(n-1)(n+1)\pi} \quad \text{where } n = 2, 4, \dots$$

Similarly we find from Eq. (3.13), that $b_1 = E/2$ and $b_n = 0$ for $n = 2, 3, \dots$. Consequently,

$$u(t) = \frac{E}{\pi} + \frac{E}{2} \sin \omega t - \frac{2E}{\pi} \left(\frac{1}{1 \cdot 3} \cos 2\omega t + \frac{1}{3 \cdot 5} \cos 4\omega t + \dots \right)$$

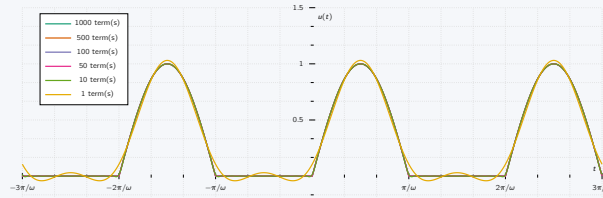


Figure 3.5: A Fourier series approximation of a half-wave rectification.

3.2.2 Even and Odd Functions

To tidy up our previous definitions, we can group functions based on if they are **even** or if they are **odd**. If $f(x)$ is an **even function**, that is, $f(-x) = f(x)$ (see Fig. 266), its Fourier series given in Eq. (3.12) reduces to a **Fourier cosine series**:

$$f(x) = a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \cos \frac{n\pi x}{L} \quad \text{where } f \text{ is even.} \quad (3.14)$$

⁶NOTE: integration from 0 to L only! with coefficients⁶

$$a_0 = \frac{1}{L} \int_0^L f(x) dx, \quad a_n = \frac{2}{L} \int_0^L f(x) \cos \frac{n\pi x}{L} dx, \quad n = 1, 2, \dots \quad (3.15)$$

Whereas if $f(x)$ is an **odd function**, that is, $f(-x) = -f(x)$, its Fourier series given in Eq. (3.12) reduces to a **Fourier sine series**:

$$f(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L} \quad \text{where } f \text{ is odd.} \quad (3.16)$$

with coefficients

$$b_n = \frac{2}{L} \int_0^L f(x) \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L} dx. \quad (3.17)$$

These formulas follow from Eq. (3.12) and Eq. (3.13) by remembering from calculus that the definite integral gives the **net area** under the curve of a function between the limits of integration.

This implies:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(a)} \quad \int_{-L}^L g(x) dx &= 2 \int_0^L g(x) dx && \text{for even } g \\ \text{(b)} \quad \int_{-L}^L h(x) dx &= 0 && \text{for odd } h \end{aligned}$$

Exercise 3.4: Sawtooth Wave

Find the Fourier series of the function (Fig. 268)

$$f(x) = x + \pi \quad \text{if} \quad -\pi < x < \pi \quad \text{and} \quad f(x + 2\pi) = f(x).$$



Figure 3.6: The sawtooth wave.

Solution

Solution. We have $f = f_1 + f_2$, where $f_1 = x$ and $f_2 = \pi$. The Fourier coefficients of f_2 are zero, except for the first one (the constant term), which is π . Hence, by Theorem 1, the Fourier coefficients a_n, b_n are those of f_1 , except for a_n , which is π . Since f_1 is odd, $a_n = 0$ for $n = 1, 2, \dots$, and

$$b_n = \frac{2}{\pi} \int_0^\pi f_1(x) \sin nx \, dx = \frac{2}{\pi} \int_0^\pi x \sin nx \, dx.$$

Integrating by parts, we obtain

$$b_n = \frac{2}{\pi} \left[\frac{-x \cos nx}{n} \Big|_0^\pi + \frac{1}{n} \int_0^\pi \cos nx \, dx \right] = -\frac{2}{n} \cos n\pi.$$

Hence $b_1 = 2$, $b_2 = -\frac{2}{2}$, $b_3 = \frac{2}{3}$, $b_4 = -\frac{2}{4} \dots$, and the Fourier series of $f(x)$ is

$$f(x) = \pi + 2 \left(\sin x - \frac{1}{2} \sin 2x + \frac{1}{3} \sin 3x - \dots \right).$$

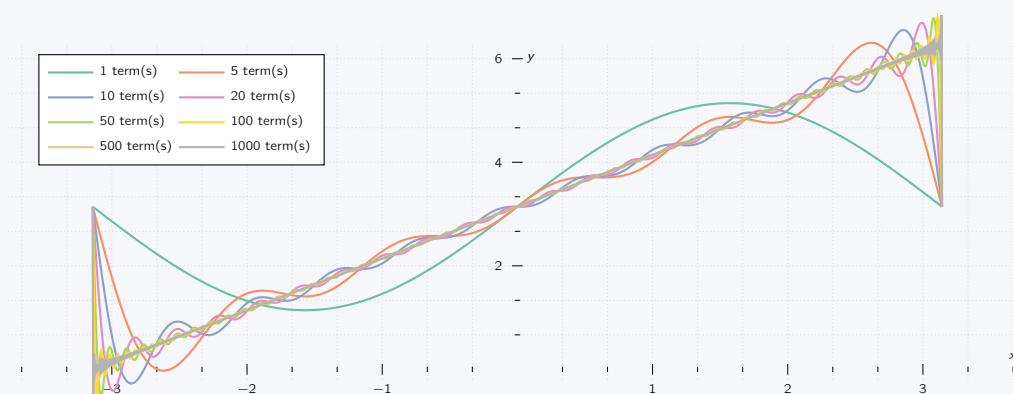


Figure 3.7

3.2.3 Half-Range Expansions

Half-range expansions are an important aspect of Fourier series. The idea is simple and pragmatic. Figure 270 explains it. We want to represent $f(x)$ in Fig. 270.0 by a Fourier series, where $f(x)$ may be the shape of a distorted violin string or the temperature in a metal bar of length L , for example.⁷

Now comes the idea.

We could extend $f(x)$ as a function of period L and develop the extended function into a **Fourier series**. But this series would, in general, contain *both* cosine *and* sine terms. We can do even better and simplify the series. For our given f we can calculate Fourier coefficients from Eq. (3.15) or from Eq. (3.17). And we have a choice and can take what seems more practical.

If we use Eq. (3.15), we get Eq. (3.14). This is the **even periodic extension** f_1 of f in Fig. 270a. If we choose Eq. (3.15) instead, we get Eq. (3.14), the odd periodic extension f_2 of f in Fig. 270b.

Both extensions have period $2L$. This motivates the name **half-range expansions**: f is given (and of physical interest) only on half the range, that is, on half the interval of periodicity of length $2L$.

3.3 Forced Oscillations

Fourier series have important applications for both Ordinary Differential Equation (ODE)s and PDEs. For this section, we shall focus only on ODEs and cover similar applications for PDEs in the Chapter 4. All these applications will show the usefulness and practicality of Euler's and Fourier's ingenious idea of splitting up periodic functions into the simplest ones possible.

From **Higher Mathematics I** we know forced oscillations of a body of mass m on a spring of modulus k are governed by the ODE:

$$my'' + cy' + ky = r(t) \quad (3.18)$$

where $y = y(t)$ is the displacement from rest, c the damping constant, k the spring constant (spring modulus), and $r(t)$ the external force depending on time t . Figure XX shows the model and Fig. XY its electrical analog, an RLC-circuit governed by

$$LI'' + RI' + \frac{1}{C}I = E'(t) \quad (3.19)$$

For our explanation we shall focus on the mass-spring system given in Eq. (3.18). If $r(t)$ is a sine or cosine function and if there is damping ($c > 0$), then the steady-state solution is a harmonic oscillation with frequency equal to that of $r(t)$. However, if $r(t)$ is not a pure sine or cosine function but is any other periodic function, then the steady-state solution will be a superposition of harmonic oscillations with frequencies equal to that of $r(t)$ and integer multiples of these frequencies. And if one of these frequencies is close to the (practical) resonant frequency of the vibrating system⁸, then the corresponding oscillation may be the dominant part of the response of the system to the external force. This is what the use of Fourier series will show us. Of course, this is quite surprising to an observer unfamiliar with Fourier series, which are highly important in the study of vibrating systems and resonance.

⁸For refreshment, please have a look at the course material for **Higher Mathematics I**

Let us discuss the entire situation in terms of a typical example.

Exercise 3.5: A Non-Sinusoidal forced Oscillation

Referring back to Eq. (3.18), let $m = 1 \text{ g}$, $c = 0.05 \text{ g s}^{-1}$, and $k = 25 \text{ g s}^{-2}$, so Eq. (3.18) becomes:

$$y'' + 0.05y' + 25y = r(t) \quad (3.20)$$

where $r(t)$ is measured in g cm s^{-2} . Let

$$r(t) = \begin{cases} t + \frac{\pi}{2} & \text{if } -\pi < t < 0, \\ -t + \frac{\pi}{2} & \text{if } 0 < t < \pi \end{cases} \quad \text{and} \quad r(t + 2\pi) = r(t).$$

Find the steady-state solution $y(t)$.

Solution

We represent $r(t)$ by a Fourier series, finding

$$r(t) = \frac{4}{\pi} \left(\cos t + \frac{1}{3^2} \cos 3t + \frac{1}{5^2} \cos 5t + \dots \right). \quad (3.21)$$

Then we consider the ODE:

$$y'' + 0.05y' + 25y = \frac{4}{n^2\pi} \cos nt \quad \text{where} \quad n = 1, 3, \dots, \quad (3.22)$$

whose right side is a single term of the series Eq. (3.21). From **Higher Mathematics I** we know that the steady-state solution $y_n(t)$ of Eq. (3.22) is of the form:

$$y_n = A_n \cos nt + B_n \sin nt. \quad (3.23)$$

By substituting this into Eq. (3.22) we find that:

$$A_n = \frac{4(25 - n^2)}{n^2\pi D_n}, \quad B_n = \frac{0.2}{n\pi D_n}, \quad \text{where} \quad D_n = (25 - n^2)^2 + (0.05n)^2 \quad (3.24)$$

Since the ODE Eq. (3.20) is linear, we may expect the steady-state solution to be in the form:

$$y = y_1 + y_3 + y_5 + \dots \quad (3.25)$$

where y_n is given by Eq. (3.21) and Eq. (3.24). In fact, this follows readily by substituting Eq. (3.25) into Eq. (3.20) and using the Fourier series of $r(t)$, provided that termwise differentiation of Eq. (3.25) is permissible.

From Eq. (3.24) we find that the amplitude of Eq. (3.23) is (a factor $\sqrt{D_n}$ cancels out)

$$C_n = \sqrt{A_n^2 + B_n^2} = \frac{4}{n^2\pi\sqrt{D_n}} \quad \blacksquare$$

3.4 Approximation by Trigonometric Polynomials

Fourier series play a **prominent role** not only in differential equations but also in approximation theory,⁹ an area that is concerned with approximating functions by other functions. Here is how Fourier series come into the picture.

Let $f(x)$ be a function on the interval $-\pi \leq x \leq \pi$ which can be represented on this interval by a Fourier series. Then the N^{th} partial sum of the Fourier series:

$$f(x) \approx a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^N (a_n \cos nx + b_n \sin nx) \quad (3.26)$$

is an approximation of the given $f(x)$. In Eq. (3.26) we choose an arbitrary N and keep it fixed. Then we ask whether Eq. (3.26) is the **best** approximation of f by a **trigonometric polynomial of the same degree N** , that is, by a function of the form:

$$F(x) = A_0 + \sum_{n=1}^N (A_n \cos nx + B_n \sin nx) \quad \text{where } N \text{ is fixed.} \quad (3.27)$$

Here, best means that the error of the approximation is as small as possible.

Of course we first need to define what we mean by the **error** of such an approximation. A possible method would be to choose the maximum of $|f(x) - F(x)|$. But in connection with Fourier series it is better to choose a definition of error that measures the **goodness of agreement** between f and F on the whole interval $-\pi \leq x \leq \pi$.

This is preferable as the sum of a Fourier series may have jumps:

F in Fig. 278 is a good overall approximation of f , but the maximum of $|f(x) - F(x)|$ (more precisely, the supremum) is large.

We choose:

$$E = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} (f - F)^2 dx. \quad (3.28)$$

This is called the **square error** of F relative to the function f on the interval $-\pi \leq x \leq \pi$. From this expression, it can clearly be stated that, $E \geq 0$. With N being **fixed**, we want to determine the coefficients in Eq. (3.27) such that E is minimum.

Since $(f - F)^2 = f^2 - 2fF + F^2$, we have

$$E = \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f^2 dx - 2 \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} fF dx + \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} F^2 dx. \quad (3.29)$$

We square Eq. (3.27), insert it into the **last** integral in Eq. (3.29), and evaluate the occurring integrals. This gives integrals of $\cos^2 nx$ and $\sin^2 nx$, ($n \geq 1$), which equal π , and integrals of

⁹In mathematics, approximation theory is concerned with how functions can best be approximated with simpler functions, and with quantitatively characterising the errors introduced thereby. What is meant by best and simpler will depend on the application.

A closely related topic is the approximation of functions by generalized Fourier series, that is, approximations based upon summation of a series of terms based upon orthogonal polynomials.

$\cos nx$, $\sin nx$, and $(\cos nx)(\sin nx)$, which are zero (0). Therefore:

$$\begin{aligned}\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} F^2 dx &= \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \left[A_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (A_n \cos nx + B_n \sin nx) \right]^2 dx \\ &= \pi (2A_0^2 + A_1^2 + \cdots + A_N^2 + B_1^2 + \cdots + B_N^2).\end{aligned}$$

We now insert Eq. (3.27) into the integral of fF in Eq. (3.29). This gives integrals of $f \cos nx$ as well as $f \sin nx$, just as in Euler's formulas, for a_n and b_n .¹⁰ Hence:

¹⁰each multiplied by A_n or B_n .

$$\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} fF dx = \pi (2A_0a_0 + A_1a_1 + \cdots + A_Na_N + B_1b_1 + \cdots + B_Nb_N).$$

With these expressions, Eq. (3.29) becomes:

$$E = \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f^2 dx - 2\pi \left[2A_0a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^N (A_na_n + B_nb_n) \right] + \pi \left[2A_0^2 + \sum_{n=1}^N (A_n^2 + B_n^2) \right].$$

We now take $A_n = a_n$ and $B_n = b_n$ in Eq. (3.27). Then in Eq. (3.4) the second line cancels half of the integral-free expression in the first line. Therefore for this choice of the coefficients of F the square error, call it E^* , is

$$E^* = \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f^2 dx - \pi \left[2a_0^2 + \sum_{n=1}^N (a_n^2 + b_n^2) \right]. \quad (3.30)$$

We finally subtract Eq. (3.30) from Eq. (3.4). Then the integrals drop out and we get terms:

$$A_n^2 - 2A_na_n + a_n^2 = (A_n - a_n)^2$$

and similar terms $(B_n - b_n)^2$:

$$E - E^* = \pi \left\{ 2(A_0 - a_0)^2 + \sum_{n=1}^N [(A_n - a_n)^2 + (B_n - b_n)^2] \right\}.$$

As the sum of squares of real numbers on the right **cannot be negative** we can state:

$$E - E^* \geq 0 \quad \text{and} \quad E \geq E^*,$$

and $E = E^*$ if and only if $A_0 = a_0, \dots, B_N = b_N$. This proves the following fundamental minimum property of the partial sums of Fourier series.

Theory 3.26: Minimum Square Error

The square error of F in Eq. (3.27), with fixed N relative to f on the interval $-\pi \leq x \leq \pi$ is minimum if and only if the coefficients of F in Eq. (3.27) are the Fourier coefficients of f . This minimum value E^* is given by Eq. (3.30).

From Eq. (3.30) we see that E^* **cannot increase** as N increases, but may decrease. Therefore,

with increasing N the partial sums of the Fourier series of gives better and better approximations to f ,

are considered from the viewpoint of the square error. As $E^* \geq 0$ and Eq. (3.30) holds for every N , we obtain from Eq. (3.30) the important **Bessel's inequality**

$$2a_0^2 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (a_n^2 + b_n^2) \leq \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(x^2) dx \quad (3.31)$$

for the Fourier coefficients of any function f for which integral on the right exists.

It can be shown that for such a function f , **Parseval's theorem** holds; that is, formula Eq. (3.31) holds with the equality sign, so that it becomes **Parseval's identity**.

$$2a_0^2 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (a_n^2 + b_n^2) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(x^2) dx. \quad (3.32)$$

3.5 Sturm–Liouville Problems

The idea of the Fourier series, at its heart, was to represent general periodic functions in terms of cosines and sines which formed a **trigonometric system**. This trigonometric system has the desirable property of **orthogonality** which allows us to calculate the coefficient of the Fourier series by the Euler formula given previously.

The question then arises,

can this approach be generalised, as in, can we replace the trigonometric system previously mentioned by other orthogonal systems, which are sets of other orthogonal functions?

As this questions is purely there as a literary device rather than a question, the answer is a resounding **yes** and will lead to generalised Fourier series, including the *Fourier-Legendre* series and the *Fourier-Bessel* series which will be our focus in the continuing sections. To prepare for this generalisation, we first have to introduce the concept of a **Sturm-Liouville problem**.¹¹

Consider a 2nd-order ODE of the form:

$$\left[p(x) y' \right]' + [q(x) + \lambda r(x)] y = 0 \quad (3.33)$$

on some interval $a \leq x \leq b$, satisfying conditions of the form:

$$\begin{aligned} k_1 y + k_2 y' &= 0 & \text{at} & \quad x = a \\ l_1 y + l_2 y' &= 0 & \text{at} & \quad x = b. \end{aligned} \quad (3.34)$$

Here λ is a parameter, and k_1, k_2, l_1, l_2 are given **real constants**. Furthermore, at least one of each constant in each condition Eq. (3.34) must be different from zero.¹² Eq. (3.33) is known as a Sturm-Liouville equation. Together with conditions given in Eq. (3.34), it is known as the **Sturm-Liouville problem**.

It is an example of a boundary value problem.

A **boundary value problem** consists of an ODE and given boundary conditions referring to the two (2) boundary points¹³ $x = a$ and $x = b$ of a given interval $a \leq x \leq b$.

The goal is to solve these type of problems. To do so, we have to consider eigenvalues and eigenfunctions.

3.5.1 Eigenvalues and Eigenfunctions

By observing Eq. (3.33), it can easily be seen that, $y = 0$ is a solution¹⁴ of the problem Eq. (3.33), and conditions in Eq. (3.34) for any λ as Eq. (3.33) is **homogeneous** and Eq. (3.34) has zeros on the RHS.

¹¹Trust me, as the motivation for this approach will become clear as you read on.

¹²We will see in the following example that, if $p(x) = r(x) = 1$ and $q(x) = 0$, then $\sin \sqrt{\lambda} x$ and $\cos \sqrt{\lambda} x$ satisfy Eq. (3.33) and constants can be found to satisfy Eq. (3.34).

¹³In this case these would be the end-points.

¹⁴The technical term would be called the **trivial solution**.

This is of no interest.

What we really need to do is to find **eigenfunctions** $y(x)$,

Solutions of Eq. (3.33) satisfying Eq. (3.34) without being identically zero.

We call a number λ for which an eigenfunction exists an **eigenvalue** of the Sturm–Liouville¹⁵ problem given in Eq. (3.33) and Eq. (3.34).

Many important ODEs in engineering can be written as Sturm–Liouville equations.

Let's look at the following example.

Exercise 3.6: Vibrating String

Find the eigenvalues and eigenfunctions of the Sturm–Liouville problem

$$y'' + \lambda y = 0, \quad y(0) = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad y(\pi) = 0. \quad (3.35)$$

Solution

From Eq. (3.33) and Eq. (3.34) we see that $p = 1$, $q = 0$, $r = 1$ in Eq. (3.33), and $a = 0$, $b = \pi$, $k_1 = l_1 = 1$, and $k_2 = l_2 = 0$ in Eq. (3.34). For negative $\lambda = -\nu^2$ a general solution of the ODE in Eq. (3.35) is:

$$y(x) = c_1 \exp \nu x + c_2 \exp -\nu x.$$

From the boundary conditions we obtain $c_1 = c_2 = 0$, so that $y = 0$, which is **NOT** an eigenfunction. For $\lambda = 0$ the situation is similar. For positive $\lambda = \nu^2$ a general solution is:

$$y(x) = A \cos \nu x + B \sin \nu x.$$

From the first boundary condition we obtain $y(0) = A = 0$. The second boundary condition then yields

$$y(\pi) = B \sin \pi \nu = 0, \quad \text{thus} \quad \nu = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots$$

For $\nu = 0$ we have $y = 0$. For $\lambda = \nu^2 = 1, 4, 9, 16, \dots$, taking $B = 1$, we obtain

$$y(x) = \sin \nu x (\nu = \sqrt{\lambda} = 1, 2, \dots).$$

Hence the eigenvalues of the problem are $\lambda = \nu^2$, where $\nu = 1, 2, \dots$, and corresponding eigenfunctions are $y(x) = \sin \nu x$, where $\nu = 1, 2, \dots$.



¹⁵Jacques Charles François Sturm (1803-1855) was a French mathematician, who made a significant addition to equation theory with his work, Sturm's theorem.

Observe that the solution to this problem is precisely the trigonometric system of the Fourier series considered previously. It can be shown that, under general conditions on the functions p , q , r given in Eq. (3.33), the Sturm–Liouville problem Eq. (3.33) and Eq. (3.34) has **infinitely** many eigenvalues.

Furthermore, if p , q , r , and p' in Eq. (3.33) are real-valued and continuous on the interval $a \leq x \leq b$ and r is positive/negative throughout that interval, then all the eigenvalues of the Sturm–Liouville¹⁶ problem Eq. (3.33), and Eq. (3.34) are real. This is what the engineer would expect since eigenvalues are often related to frequencies, energies, or other physical quantities that must be real.

The most important property of eigenfunctions of Sturm–Liouville problems is its *orthogonality*, which will be crucial in series developments in terms of eigenfunctions, as we shall see in the next section.



¹⁶Joseph Liouville (1809 - 1882) was a French mathematician and engineer.

3.5.2 Orthogonal Functions

Functions $y_1(x), y_2(x), \dots$ defined on some interval $a \leq x \leq b$ are called **orthogonal** on this interval with respect to the **weight function** $r(x) > 0$ if for all m and all n different from m ,

$$(y_m, y_n) = \int_a^b r(x) y_m(x) y_n(x) dx = 0 \quad \text{where} \quad m \neq n. \quad (3.36)$$

(y_m, y_n) is a **standard notation** for this integral. **The norm** $\|y_m\|$ of y_m is defined by

$$\|y_m\| = \sqrt{(y_m, y_m)} = \sqrt{\int_a^b r(x) y_m^2(x) dx}. \quad (3.37)$$

This is the square root of the integral in Eq. (3.36) with $n = m$.

The functions y_1, y_2, \dots are called **orthonormal** on $a \leq x \leq b$ if they are orthogonal on this interval and all have norm 1. Then we can write Eq. (3.36) and Eq. (3.37) jointly by using the Kronecker¹⁷ symbol δ_{mn} , namely:

$$(y_m, y_n) = \int_a^b r(x) y_m(x) y_n(x) dx = \delta_{mn} = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } m \neq n \\ 1 & \text{if } m = n \end{cases} \quad (3.38)$$

If $r(x) = 1$, we more briefly call the functions **orthogonal** instead of orthogonal with respect to $r(x) = 1$; similarly for orthonormality. Then

$$(y_m, y_n) = \int_a^b r(x) y_m(x) y_n(x) dx = 0 \quad (m \neq n), \quad \|y_m\| = \sqrt{(y_m, y_m)} = \sqrt{\int_a^b y_m^2(x) dx}$$

The next example serves as an illustration of the material on orthogonal functions just discussed.

Exercise 3.7: Orthogonal Functions

The functions $y_m(x) = \sin mx$, $m = 1, 2, \dots$ form an orthogonal set on the interval $-\pi \leq x \leq \pi$, because for $m \neq n$ we obtain by integration

$$(y_m, y_n) = \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \sin mx \sin nx dx = \frac{1}{2} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \cos(m-n)x dx - \frac{1}{2} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \cos(m+n)x dx = 0, \quad (m \neq n).$$

The norm $\|y_m\| = \sqrt{(y_m, y_m)}$ equals $\sqrt{\pi}$ because

$$\|y_m\|^2 = (y_m, y_m) = \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \sin^2 mx dx = \pi$$

$$(m = 1, 2, \dots)$$

Hence the corresponding orthonormal set, obtained by division by the norm, is

$$\frac{\sin x}{\sqrt{\pi}}, \quad \frac{\sin 2x}{\sqrt{\pi}}, \quad \frac{\sin 3x}{\sqrt{\pi}}, \quad \dots \quad \blacksquare$$



¹⁷Leopold Kronecker (1823 – 1891) was a German mathematician who worked on number theory, abstract algebra and logic, and criticized Georg Cantor's work on set theory.

3.6 Generalised Fourier Series

Fourier series are made up of the trigonometric system discussed previously, which is **orthogonal**, and orthogonality was essential in obtaining the Euler formulas for the Fourier coefficients. Orthogonality will also give us coefficient formulas for the desired generalised Fourier series, including the Fourier-Legendre series and the Fourier-Bessel series.

This generalization is as follows.

Let y_0, y_1, y_2, \dots be orthogonal with respect to a weight function $r(x)$ on an interval $a \equiv b$, and let $f(x)$ be a function that can be represented by a convergent series

$$f(x) = \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} a_m y_m(x) = a_0 y_0(x) + a_1 y_1(x) + \dots \quad (3.39)$$

This is called an **orthogonal series**, **orthogonal expansion**, or **generalised Fourier series**. If the y_m are the eigenfunctions of a Sturm-Liouville problem, we call Eq. (3.39) an **eigenfunction expansion**. In Eq. (3.39) we use again m for summation as n will be used as a fixed order of Bessel function.

Given $f(x)$, we have to determine the coefficients in Eq. (3.39), called the **Fourier constants** of $f(x)$ with respect to y_0, y_1, \dots . Because of the orthogonality, this is simple. We multiply both sides of Eq. (3.39) by $r(x) y_n(x)$ (*fixed*) and then integrate on both sides from a to b . We assume that term-by-term integration is permissible. Then we obtain

$$(f, y_n) = \int_a^b r f y_n dx = \int_a^b r \left(\sum_{m=0}^{\infty} a_m y_m \right) y_n dx = \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} a_m \int_a^b r y_m y_n dx = \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} a_m (y_m, y_n).$$

Because of the orthogonality all the integrals on the right are zero, except when $m = n$. Hence the whole infinite series reduces to the single term

$$a_n (y_n, y_n) = a_n \|y_n\|^2. \quad \text{Therefore} \quad (f, y_n) = a_n \|y_n\|^2.$$

Assuming that all the functions y_n have non-zero norm, we can divide by $\|y_n\|^2$, writing again m for n , to be in agreement with Eq. (3.39), we get the desired formula for the Fourier constants

$$a_m = \frac{(f, y_m)}{\|y_m\|^2} = \frac{1}{\|y_m\|^2} \int_a^b r(x) f(x) y_m(x) dx \quad \text{where} \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$$

This formula generalizes the Euler formulas (6) in Sec. 11.1 as well as the principle of their derivation, namely, by orthogonality.

Exercise 3.8: Fourier-Legendre Series

A **Fourier-Legendre series** is an eigenfunction expansion

$$f(x) = \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} a_m P_m(x) = a_0 P_0 + a_1 P_1(x) + a_2 P_2(x) + \dots = a_0 + a_1 x + a_2 \left(\frac{3}{2} x^2 - \frac{1}{2} \right) + \dots$$

in terms of Legendre polynomials (Sec. 5.3). The latter are the eigenfunctions of the Sturm-Liouville problem in Example 4

of Sec. 11.5 on the interval $-1 \leq x \leq 1$. We have $r(x) = 1$ for Legendre's equation, and (2) gives

$$a_m = \frac{2m+1}{2} \int_{-1}^1 f(x) P_m(x) dx,$$

because the norm is: $\|P_m\| = \sqrt{\int_{-1}^1 \frac{1}{m} (x)^2 dx} = \sqrt{\frac{2}{2m} + 1}$ as we state without proof. The proof of (4) is tricky; it uses Rodrigues's formula in Problem Set 5.2 and a reduction of the resulting integral to a quotient of gamma functions. For instance, let $f(x) = \sin \pi x$. Then we obtain the coefficients

$$a_m = \frac{2m+1}{2} \int_{-1}^1 (\sin \pi x) P_m(x) dx, \quad \text{thus} \quad a_1 = \frac{3}{2} \int_{-1}^1 x \sin \pi x dx = \frac{3}{\pi} = 0.95493, \quad \text{etc.}$$

Hence the Fourier-Legendre series of $\sin \pi x$ is

$$\begin{aligned} \sin \pi x = & 0.95493 P_1(x) - 1.15824 P_3(x) + 0.21929 P_5(x) - 0.01664 P_7(x) + 0.00068 P_9(x) \\ & - 0.00002 P_{11}(x) + \dots \end{aligned}$$

The coefficient of P_{33} is about $3 \cdot 10^{-7}$. The sum of the first three nonzero terms gives a curve that practically coincides with the sine curve. Can you see why the even-numbered coefficients are zero? Why a_3 is the absolutely biggest coefficient?

3.6.1 Mean Square Convergence. Completeness

Ideas on approximation in the previous section generalises from Fourier series to orthogonal series Eq. (3.39) that are made up of an orthonormal set that is "complete," that is, consists of "sufficiently many" functions so that (1) can represent large classes of other functions (definition below).

In this connection, convergence is **convergence in the norm**, also called **mean-square convergence**; that is, a sequence of functions f_k is called **convergent with the limit f** if

$$\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \|f_k - f\| = 0; \quad (3.40)$$

written out by (5) in Sec. 11.5 (where we can drop the square root, as this does not affect the limit)

$$\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \int_a^b r(x) [f_k(x) - f(x)]^2 dx = 0.$$

Accordingly, the series (1) converges and represents f if

$$\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \int_a^b r(x) [f_s(x) - f(x)]^2 dx = 0.$$

where s_k is the k th partial sum of (1).

$$s_k(x) = \sum_{m=0}^k a_m y_m(x).$$

3.7 Fourier Integrals

Fourier series are powerful tools for problems involving functions that are periodic or are of interest on a finite interval only. Sections 11.2 and 11.3 first illustrated this, and various further applications follow in Chap. 12. Since, of course, many problems involve functions that are nonperiodic and are of interest on the whole x -axis, we ask what can be done to extend the method of Fourier series to such functions. This idea will lead to "Fourier integrals."

In Example 1 we start from a special function f_L of period $2L$ and see what happens to its Fourier series if we let $L \rightarrow \infty$. Then we do the same for an arbitrary function f_L of period $2L$. This will motivate and suggest the main result of this section, which is an integral representation given in Theorem 1 below.

3.7.1 From Series to Integrals

We now consider **any** periodic function $f_L(x)$ of period $2L$ which can be represented by a Fourier series.

$$f_L(x) = a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (a_n \cos w_n x + b_n \sin w_n x), \quad w_n = \frac{n\pi}{L},$$

and find out what happens if we let $L \rightarrow \infty$. Together with Example 1 the present calculation will suggest we should expect an integral, instead of a series, involving $\cos wx$ and $\sin wx$ with w being no longer **restricted to integer multiples** $w = w_n = n\pi/L$ of π/L but taking **all values**.

We shall also see what form such an integral might have.

If we insert a_n and b_n from the Euler formulas (6), Sec. 11.2, and denote the variable of integration by v , the Fourier series of $f_L(x)$ becomes:

$$\begin{aligned} f_L(x) &= \frac{1}{2L} \int_{-L}^L f_L(v) dv \\ &+ \frac{1}{L} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left[\cos w_n x \int_{-L}^L f_L(v) \cos w_n v dv + \sin w_n x \int_{-L}^L f_L(v) \sin w_n v dv \right]. \end{aligned}$$

We now set

$$\Delta w = w_{n+1} - w_n = \frac{(n+1)\pi}{L} - \frac{n\pi}{L} = \frac{\pi}{L}.$$

Then $1/L = \Delta w/\pi$, and we may write the Fourier series in the form

$$\begin{aligned} f_L(x) &= \frac{1}{2L} \int_{-L}^L f_L(v) dv \\ &+ \frac{1}{\pi} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left[\cos w_n \Delta w x \int_{-L}^L f_L(v) \cos w_n v dv + \sin w_n \Delta w x \int_{-L}^L f_L(v) \sin w_n v dv \right] \quad (3.41) \end{aligned}$$

This representation is valid for any fixed L , arbitrarily large, but finite.

We now let $L \rightarrow \infty$ and assume that the resulting non-periodic function:

$$f(x) = \lim_{L \rightarrow \infty} f_L(x)$$

is **absolutely integrable** on the x -axis; that is, the following (finite!) limits exist:

$$\lim_{a \rightarrow -\infty} \int_a^0 |f(x)| dx + \lim_{b \rightarrow +\infty} \int_0^b |f(x)| dx + \left(\text{written } \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |f(x)| dx \right). \quad (3.42)$$

Then $1/L \rightarrow 0$, and the value of the first term on the right side of Eq. (3.41) approaches zero. Also $\Delta w = \pi/L \rightarrow 0$ and it seems *plausible* that the infinite series in Eq. (3.41) becomes an integral from 0 to ∞ , which represents $f(x)$, namely,

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^{\infty} \left[\cos wx \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} f(v) \cos wv dv + \sin wx \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} f(v) \sin wv dv \right] dw \quad (3.43)$$

If we introduce the notations

$$A(w) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(v) \cos wv dv, \quad B(w) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(v) \sin wv dv. \quad (3.44)$$

we can write this in the form

$$f(x) = \int_0^{\infty} [A(w) \cos wx + B(w) \sin wx] dw \quad (3.45)$$

This is called a representation of $f(x)$ by a **Fourier integral**.

It is clear that our naive approach merely suggests the representation Eq. (3.45), but by no means establishes it; in fact, the limit of the series in Eq. (3.41) as Δw approaches zero is not the definition of the integral Eq. (3.43). Sufficient conditions for the validity of Eq. (3.45) are as follows.

3.7.2 Application Areas

The main application of Fourier integrals is in solving ODEs and PDEs, as we shall see for PDEs in Sec.12.6. However, we can also use Fourier integrals in integration and in discussing functions defined by integrals, as the next example.

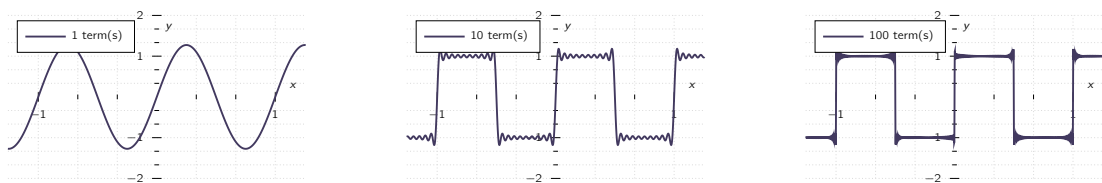


Figure 3.8: Illustrating the development of the Gibbs Phenomenon.

Exercise 3.9: Singular Pulses

Find the Fourier integral representation of the function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } |x| < 1 \\ 0 & \text{if } |x| > 1 \end{cases}$$

Solution _____

3.8 Cosine and Sine Transforms

An **integral transform** is a transformation in the form of an integral that produces from given functions new functions depending on a different variable. One is mainly interested in these transforms because they can be used as tools in solving ODEs, PDEs, and integral equations and can often be of help in handling and applying special functions. The Laplace transform of Chap. 6 serves as an example and is by far the most important integral transform in engineering.

Next in order of importance are Fourier transforms. They can be obtained from the Fourier integral in Sec. 11.7 in a straightforward way. In this section we derive two such transforms that are real, and in Sec. 11.9 a complex one.

3.8.1 Cosine Transform

The Fourier cosine transform concerns even functions $f(x)$. We obtain it from the Fourier cosine integral [(10) in Sec. 10.7]

$$f(x) = \int_0^{\infty} A(w) \cos wx \, dw, \quad \text{where} \quad A(w) = \frac{2}{\pi} \int_0^{\infty} f(v) \cos wv \, dv.$$

Namely, we set $A(w) = \sqrt{2/\pi} \hat{f}_c(w)$, where c suggests "cosine." Then, writing $v = x$ in the formula for $A(w)$, we have

$$\hat{f}_c(w) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \int_0^{\infty} f(x) \cos wx \, dx$$

$$f(x) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \int_0^{\infty} \hat{f}_c(w) \cos wx \, dw.$$

Formula (1a) gives from $f(x)$ a new function $\hat{f}_c(w)$, called the **Fourier cosine transform** of $f(x)$. Formula (1b) gives us back $f(x)$ from $\hat{f}_c(w)$, and we therefore call $f(x)$ the **inverse Fourier cosine transform** of $\hat{f}_c(w)$.

The process of obtaining the transform \hat{f}_c from a given f is also called the **Fourier cosine transform** or the Fourier cosine transform method.

3.8.2 Sine Transform

Similarly, in (11), Sec. 11.7, we set $B(w) = \sqrt{2/\pi} \hat{f}_s(w)$, where s suggests "sine." Then, writing $v = x$, we have from (11), Sec. 11.7, the **Fourier sine transform**, of $f(x)$ given by

and the inverse Fourier sine transform of $\hat{f}_s(w)$, given by

$$f(x) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \int_0^\infty \hat{f}_s(w) \sin wx \, dw.$$

The process of obtaining $\hat{f}_s(w)$ from $f(x)$ is also called the **Fourier sine transform** or the Fourier sine transform method.

Other notations are

$$\mathcal{F}_e(f) = \hat{f}_e, \quad \mathcal{F}_s(f) = \hat{f}_s$$

and $\overline{\mathcal{F}_c}^{-1}$ and $\overline{\mathcal{F}_s}^{-1}$ for the inverses of $\overline{\mathcal{F}_c}$ and $\overline{\mathcal{F}_s}$, respectively.

3.9 Fourier Transform: Discrete and Fast

In Section 3.8, we derived two (2) real transforms, namely cosine and sine. Now, we want to derive a complex transform called the **Fourier transform**. It will be obtained from the **complex Fourier integral**, which will be discussed next.

3.9.1 Complex Form of the Fourier Integral

The **real** Fourier integral is, which we worked previously:

$$f(x) = \int_0^{\infty} [A(w) \cos wx + B(w) \sin wx] dw$$

where:

$$A(w) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} f(v) \cos wv dv \quad \text{and} \quad B(w) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} f(v) \sin wv dv$$

Substituting A and B into the integral for f , we have:

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} f(v) [\cos wv \cos wx + \sin wv \sin wx] dv dw.$$

By the addition formula for the cosine, the expression in the brackets $[\dots]$ equals $\cos(wv - wx)$ or, since the cosine is **even**, $\cos(wx - wv)$. We therefore obtain:

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^{\infty} \left[\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(v) \cos(wx - wv) dv \right] dw. \quad (3.46)$$

The integral in brackets is an **even** function of w , call it $F(x)$, because $\cos(wx - wv)$ is an even function of w , the function f does **NOT** depend on w , and we integrate with respect to v and **NOT** w . Therefore, the integral of $F(w)$ from $w = 0$ to ∞ is $\frac{1}{2}$ times the integral of $F(w)$ from $-\infty$ to ∞ . Therefore:¹⁸

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left[\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(v) \cos(wx - wv) dv \right] dw.$$

We claim that the integral of the form Eq. (3.46) with \sin instead of \cos is zero:

$$\frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left[\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(v) \sin(wx - wv) dv \right] dw = 0.$$

This is true since $\sin(wx - wv)$ is an odd function of w , which makes the integral in brackets an odd function of w , call it $G(w)$. Hence the integral of $G(w)$ from $-\infty$ to ∞ is zero, as claimed. We now take the integrand of (1) plus $i (= \sqrt{-1})$ times the integrand of (2) and use the **Euler formula**[(11) in Sec. 2.2]

$$e^{ix} = \cos x + i \sin x.$$

Taking $wv - wx$ instead of x in (3) and multiplying by $f(v)$ gives

$$f(v) \cos(wx - wv) + if(v) \sin(wx - wv) = f(v) e^{i(wx - wv)}.$$

¹⁸note the change of the integration limit!

Hence the result of adding (1) plus i times (2), called the **complex Fourier integral**, is

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(v) e^{i\omega(x-v)} dv d\omega \quad (i = \sqrt{-1}).$$

To obtain the desired Fourier transform will take only a very short step from here.

3.9.2 Transform and Its Inverse

Writing the exponential function in (4) as a product of exponential functions, we have:

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(v) e^{-i\omega v} dv \right] e^{-i\omega x} d\omega. \quad (3.47)$$

The expression in brackets is a function of w , is denoted by $\hat{f}(w)$, and is called the **Fourier transform** of f . Writing $v = x$, we have:

$$\hat{f}(w) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) e^{-i\omega x} dx. \quad (3.48)$$

With this, Eq. (3.47) becomes:

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{f}(w) e^{i\omega x} dw. \quad (3.49)$$

and is called the **inverse Fourier transform** of $\hat{f}(w)$. Another notation for the Fourier transform is

$$\hat{f} = \mathcal{F}(f) \quad \text{so that} \quad f = \mathcal{F}^{-1}(\hat{f})$$

The process of obtaining the Fourier transform $\mathcal{F}(f) = \hat{f}$ from a given f is also called the Fourier transform or the Fourier transform method. We now state¹⁹ conditions that are sufficient for the existence of the Fourier transform.

¹⁹The proof is of a marvellous one however, the margins are too small to contain.

Theory 3.27: Existence of the Fourier Transform

If $f(x)$ is absolutely integrable on the x -axis and **piecewise continuous** on every finite interval, then the Fourier transform $\hat{f}(w)$ of $f(x)$ given by Eq. (3.48) exists.

3.9.3 Interpretation: Spectrum

The nature of the representation Eq. (3.49) of $f(x)$ becomes clear if we think of it as a **superposition of sinusoidal oscillations of all possible frequencies**, called a spectral representation. This name is suggested by optics, where light is such a superposition of colours.²⁰

²⁰i.e., frequencies.

In Eq. (3.49), the "spectral density" $\hat{f}(w)$ measures the intensity of $f(x)$ in the frequency interval between w and $w + \Delta w$ (Δw small, fixed). We claim that, in connection with vibrations, the integral

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |\hat{f}(w)|^2 dw$$

can be interpreted as the **total energy** of the physical system. Therefore an integral of $|\hat{f}(w)|^2$ from, say a to b , gives the contribution of the frequencies w between a and b to the total energy.

To make this plausible, we begin with a mechanical system giving a single frequency, namely, the harmonic oscillator.

$$my'' + ky = 0$$

Here we denote time t by x . Multiplication by y' gives:

$$my'y'' + ky'y = 0$$

By integration:

$$\frac{1}{2}mv^2 + \frac{1}{2}ky^2 = E_0 = \text{const},$$

where $v = y'$ is the velocity. The first term is the kinetic energy, the second the potential energy, and E_0 the total energy of the system. Now a general solution is:

$$y = a_1 \cos w_0 x + b_1 \sin w_0 x = c_1 e^{i w_0 x} + c_{-1} e^{-i w_0 x} \quad \text{and} \quad w_0^2 = k/m,$$

where $c_1 = (a_1 - ib_1)/2$, $c_{-1} = \bar{c}_1 = (a_1 + ib_1)/2$. We write simply $A = c_1 e^{i w_0 x}$, $B = c_{-1} e^{-i w_0 x}$. Then $y = A + B$. By differentiation, $v = y' = A' + B' = i w_0 (A - B)$. Substitution of v and y on the left side of the equation for E_0 gives

$$E_0 = \frac{1}{2}mv^2 + \frac{1}{2}ky^2 = \frac{1}{2}m(i w_0)^2 (A - B)^2 + \frac{1}{2}k(A + B)^2.$$

Here $w_0^2 = k/m$, as just stated; hence $m w_0^2 = k$. Also $i^2 = -1$, so that

$$E_0 = \frac{1}{2}k[-(A - B)^2 + (A + B)^2] = 2kAB = 2k c_1 e^{i w_0 x} c_{-1} e^{-i w_0 x} = 2k c_1 c_{-1} = 2k |c_1|^2.$$

Hence the energy is proportional to the square of the amplitude $|c_1|$.

As the next step, if a more complicated system leads to a periodic solution $y = f(x)$ that can be represented by a Fourier series, then instead of the single energy term $|c_1|^2$ we get a series of squares $|c_n|^2$ of Fourier coefficients c_n given by (6), Sec. 11.4. In this case we have a "discrete spectrum" (or **point spectrum**) consisting of countably many isolated frequencies (infinitely many, in general), the corresponding $|c_n|^2$ being the contributions to the total energy.

Finally, a system whose solution can be represented by an integral (7) leads to the above integral for the energy, as is plausible from the cases just discussed.

3.9.4 Discrete and Fast Fourier Transform

In using Fourier series, Fourier transforms, and trigonometric approximations discussed previously we had to assume the function $f(x)$ is given on some interval is continuous. Now very often a function,

say $f(x)$, is given only in terms of values at **finitely** many points, and one is interested in extending Fourier analysis to this case.

The main application of such a **discrete Fourier analysis** concerns large amounts of equally spaced data, as they occur in telecommunication, time series analysis, and various simulation problems. In these situations, dealing with **sampled** values rather than with functions, we can replace the Fourier transform by the so-called Discrete Fourier Transform (DFT) as follows.

Let $f(x)$ be periodic, say a period 2π for simplicity. We assume N measurements of $f(x)$ are taken over the interval $0 \leq x \leq 2\pi$ at **regularly spaced points**:

$$x_k = \frac{2\pi k}{N}, \quad \text{where} \quad k = 0, 1, \dots, N-1. \quad (3.50)$$

We also say that $f(x)$ is being **sampled** at these points. We now want to determine a **complex trigonometric polynomial** of the following form:

$$q(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} c_n e^{i n x_k} \quad (3.51)$$

which interpolates $f(x)$ at the nodes Eq. (3.50), that is, $q(x_k) = f(x_k)$, written out, with f_k denoting $f(x_k)$,

$$f_k = f(x_k) = q(x_k) = \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} c_n e^{i n x_k}, \quad \text{where} \quad k = 0, 1, \dots, N-1. \quad (3.52)$$

Therefore, we must determine the coefficients c_0, \dots, c_{N-1} such that Eq. (3.52) holds. We do this by an idea similar to that in Sec. 11.1 for deriving the Fourier coefficients by using the orthogonality of the trigonometric system.

Instead of integrals we now take sums.

Namely, we multiply Eq. (3.52) by $e^{-j m x_k}$ and²¹ sum over k from 0 to $N-1$. Then we interchange the order of the two summations and insert x_k from (14). This gives

²¹Please be observant here and don't forget the minus.

$$\sum_{k=0}^{N-1} f(k) e^{-i m x_k} = \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} c_n e^{-i(n-m) x_k} = \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} c_n \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} e^{-i(n-m) 2\pi k / N}. \quad (3.53)$$

Now

$$e^{i(n-m) 2\pi k / N} = \left[e^{i(n-m) 2\pi / N} \right]^k$$

We denote $[\dots]$ by r . For $n = m$ we have $r = e^0 = 1$. The sum of these terms over k equals N , the number of these terms. For $n \neq m$ we have $r \neq 1$ and by the formula for a geometric sum:

$$\sum_{k=0}^{N-1} r^k = \frac{1 - r^N}{1 - r} = 0$$

because $r^N = 1$. As k, m and n are **integers**:

$$r^N = e^{i(n-m) 2\pi k} = \cos 2\pi k (n-m) + i \sin 2\pi k (n-m) = 1 + 0 = 1.$$

This shows that the right side of Eq. (3.53) equals $c_m N$. Writing n for m and dividing by N , we thus obtain the desired coefficient formula

$$c_n = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} f(k) e^{i n x_k} \quad \text{where} \quad f_k = f(x_k) \quad \text{and} \quad n = 0, 1, \dots, N-1. \quad (3.54)$$

As the calculation of c_n involves successive halving of the problem size N , it is practical to drop the factor $1/N$ from c_n and define the DFT of the given signal $\mathbf{f} = [f_0 \ \dots \ f_{N-1}]^T$ to be the vector $\hat{\mathbf{f}} = [\hat{f}_0 \ \dots \ \hat{f}_{N-1}]^T$ with components:

$$\hat{f}_n = N c_n = \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} f_k e^{-i n x_k} \quad \text{where} \quad f_k = f(x_k) \quad \text{and} \quad n = 0, 1, \dots, N-1. \quad (3.55)$$

This is the frequency spectrum of the signal.

In vector notation, $\hat{\mathbf{f}} = \mathbf{F}_N \mathbf{f}$, where the $N \times N$ Fourier matrix $\mathbf{F}_N = [e_{nk}]$ has the entries given in Eq. (3.55):

$$e_{nk} = e^{-i n x_k} = e^{-2\pi i n k / N} = w^{nk} \quad \text{and} \quad w = w_N = e^{-2\pi i / N} \quad (3.56)$$

where $n, k = 0, \dots, N-1$.

Chapter 4

Partial Differential Equations

Table of Contents

4.1	Introduction and Concepts	103
4.2	Vibrating String - The Wave Equation	106
4.3	Separation of Variables	109
4.4	The Wave Equation - D'Alembert's Solution	116
4.5	The Heat Equation	120
4.6	Solving the Heat Equation	122
4.7	Heat Conduction in Long Bars	127

4.1 Introduction and Concepts

A PDE is an equation containing **one or more** partial derivatives of an **unknown** function which depends on at least two (2) variables, and partial derivatives of the unknown function with respect to independent variables. Usually, for the purposes of engineering applications, one of these deals with time (t) and the remaining with space.¹

¹These are spatial variables(s) such as x , y , z for example.

The most important PDEs are the **wave equations** which can model the vibrating string and membrane, the **heat equation** for the propagation of temperature in a bar or wire, and the Laplace equation for **electrostatic potentials**, and not to mention modelling electromagnetic waves used in communication systems. It would rather be unjust to downplay their importance as PDEs are very important in dynamics, elasticity, heat transfer, and many more to count.

PDEs have a much wider use than ODEs, which can only model simple systems.

4.1.1 Concepts

A PDE is an equation involving one or more partial derivatives of an unknown function, let's call it u , which depends on two (2) or more variables, often time (t) and one or several variables in space. And similar to ODEs, the order of the **highest derivative** is called the **order** of the PDE.

Similar to ODEs, 2nd order PDEs will be the most important ones in applications.

Similar to ODEs, we say a PDE is **linear** if it is of the 1st degree in the unknown function u and its partial derivatives. Otherwise we call it **non-linear**. Based on this definition, all equations in Example 1 are **linear**. We call a linear PDE **homogeneous** if each of its terms contains either u or one of its partial derivatives. Otherwise we call the equation **non-homogeneous**.

Therefore, Eq. (4.4) in Example 1 (with f not identically zero) is non-homogeneous, whereas the other equations are homogeneous.²

²As can be seen all the other equations RHS are zero.

Information: Important 2nd Order Equations

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} = c^2 \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} \quad \text{One-dimensional wave equation} \quad (4.1)$$

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = c^2 \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} \quad \text{One-dimensional heat equation} \quad (4.2)$$

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} = 0 \quad \text{Two-dimensional Laplace equation} \quad (4.3)$$

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} = f(x, y) \quad \text{Two-dimensional Poisson equation} \quad (4.4)$$

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} = c^2 \left(\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} \right) \quad \text{Two-dimensional wave equation} \quad (4.5)$$

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial z^2} = 0 \quad \text{Three-dimensional Laplace equation} \quad (4.6)$$

A **solution** of a PDE in some region R of the space of the independent variables is a function which has all the partial derivatives appearing in the PDE in some domain D containing R , and satisfies the PDE everywhere in R .

Often one only requires the function to be continuous on the boundary of R , has those derivatives in the interior of R , and satisfies the PDE in the interior of R . Letting R lie in D simplifies the situation regarding derivatives on the boundary of R , which is then the same on the boundary as it is in the interior of R .

In general, the number of solutions of a PDE can be **uncountably large**. For example, the functions:

$$u = x^2 - y^2, \quad u = e^x \cos y, \quad u = \sin x \cosh y, \quad u = \ln(x^2 + y^2),$$

³The proof is left to the reader as practice.

while entirely different from each other, are solutions³ of Eq. (4.3). We shall see later, the **unique solution** of a PDE corresponding to a given physical problem will be obtained by the use of **additional conditions** given by the problem.

As an example, this may be the condition that the solution u assume given values on the boundary of the region R , called **boundary conditions**, or, when time (t) is one of the variables, u^4 may be prescribed at $t = 0$, which are called **initial conditions**.

⁴this could also be written as $u_t = \partial u / \partial t$

We know, if an ODE is both linear and homogeneous, then from known solutions we can obtain further solutions by superposition. For PDEs the situation is quite similar:

Theory 4.28: Fundamental Theory of Superposition

If u_1 and u_2 are solutions of a homogeneous linear PDE in some region R , then

$$u = c_1 u_1 + c_2 u_2,$$

with any constants c_1 and c_2 is also a solution of that PDE in the region R .

The simple proof of this important theorem is quite similar to the theorem discussed in the 2nd-order ODE discussed in **Higher Mathematics I** and is left to the student as a simple exercise. Before we take on with the first major PDE let us have a revisit to some ODEs.

4.2 Vibrating String - The Wave Equation

In this section we model a vibrating string, which will lead to our first important PDE, which will then be solved in following section.

It is important to pay very close attention to the modelling process and detailed derivation starting from scratch as the skills learned can be applied to modeling other phenomena in general and in particular to modeling a vibrating membrane.

⁵such as plucking a violin string.

We want to derive the PDE modeling small transverse variations of an elastic string⁵. We place the string along the x -axis, stretch it to length L , and fasten it at the ends of $x = 0$ and $x = L$. We then distort the string, and at some instant, let's call it $t = 0$, we release and allow it to vibrate.

A transverse wave, motion in which all points on a wave oscillate along paths at right angles to the direction of the wave's advance

The problem is to **determine the vibrations of the string**. That is, to find its deflection $u(x, t)$ at any point (x) and at any time $(t > 0)$ which can be seen in **Fig. 4.1**.

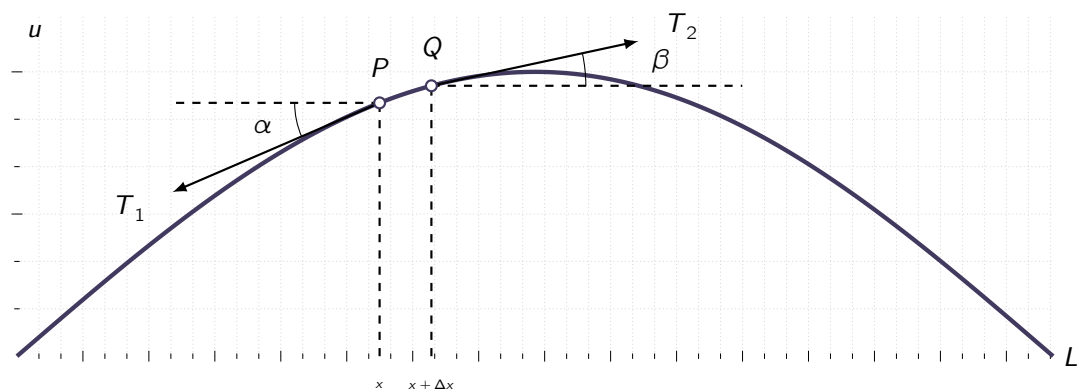


Figure 4.1: Deflected string at fixed time t .

$u(x, t)$ will be the solution of a PDE that is the model of our physical system to be derived. Reasonable simplifying assumptions are as follows:

Physical Assumptions

1. The mass of the string per unit length is assumed constant.⁶ The string is perfectly elastic and does not offer any resistance to bending.
2. The tension caused by stretching the string before fastening it at the ends is so large that the action of the **gravitational force on the string can be neglected**.

⁶From an engineering perspective, this means the material is void of any imperfections.

3. The string performs small transverse motions in a vertical plane; that is, every particle of the string moves strictly vertically and so that the deflection and the slope at every point of the string always remain small in absolute value.

Under these assumptions we can derive solutions $u(x, t)$ describing the physical reality sufficiently well.

4.2.1 Deriving the Model From Forces

The model of the vibrating string will consist of the **wave equation** and additional conditions. To obtain the PDE, we will only consider the forces acting on a small portion of the string.

As the string offers **no resistance** to bending, the tension is **tangential to the curve** of the string at each point. To that end, let T_1 and T_2 be the tension at the endpoints P and Q of that portion.

As the points of the string move vertically, there is no motion in the horizontal direction

This means, the horizontal components of the tension **must be constant**. Using the notation shown in **Fig. 4.1**, we obtain:

$$T_1 \cos \alpha = T_2 \cos \beta = T = \text{const.} \quad (4.7)$$

In the vertical direction we have two (2) forces:

which are the vertical components $-T_1 \sin \alpha$ and $T_2 \sin \beta$ from T_1 and T_2 respectively.

Here, the minus sign appears due to the component at P is directed **downward**.

By Newton's 2nd law,⁷ the resultant of these two (2) forces is equal to the mass $\rho \Delta x$ of the portion times the acceleration $\partial^2 u / \partial t^2$, evaluated at some point between x and $x + \Delta x$.

Here, ρ is the mass of the un-deflected string per unit length, and Δx is the length of the portion of the un-deflected string.⁸ Therefore,

$$T_2 \sin \beta - T_1 \sin \alpha = \rho \Delta x \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2}.$$

Using Eq. (4.7), we can divide this by $T_2 \cos \beta = T_1 \cos \alpha = T$, obtaining:

$$\frac{T_2 \sin \beta}{T_2 \cos \beta} - \frac{T_1 \sin \alpha}{T_1 \cos \alpha} = \tan \beta - \tan \alpha = \frac{\rho \Delta x}{T} \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2}. \quad (4.8)$$

Now $\tan \alpha$ and $\tan \beta$ are the **slopes of the string** at x and $x + \Delta x$:

$$\tan \alpha = \left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \right) \Big|_x \quad \text{and} \quad \tan \beta = \left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \right) \Big|_{x+\Delta x}.$$

Here we have to write partial derivatives because u also depends on time (t). Dividing Eq. (4.8) by

⁷At any instant of time, the net force on a body is equal to the body's acceleration multiplied by its mass or, equivalently, the rate at which the body's momentum is changing with time.

⁸ Δ is generally used to denote small quantities; and has nothing to do with the Laplacian ∇^2 , which is sometimes also denoted by Δ .

Δx , we have:

$$\frac{1}{\Delta x} \left[\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} \right) \Big|_{x+\Delta x} - \left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} \right) \Big|_x \right] = \frac{\rho}{T} \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2}$$

If we let Δx approach zero, we obtain the linear PDE:

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} = c^2 \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} \quad c^2 = \frac{T}{\rho} \quad (4.9)$$

This is called the **one-dimensional wave equation**. We see that it is **homogeneous** and of **the second order**. The physical constant T/ρ is denoted by c^2 ⁹ to indicate that this constant is **positive**, a fact that will be essential to the form of the solutions.

Here “One-dimensional” means that the equation involves only one space variable, which is usually x .

Now that we derived the equation, we shall complete setting up the model and then show how to solve it by a general method that is probably the most important one for PDEs in engineering mathematics.

4.3 Separation of Variables

We will now continue our work from where we left off, where we modeled a vibrating string and obtained the one-dimensional wave equation. We now have to complete the model by adding additional conditions and then solving the resulting model.

The model of a vibrating elastic string consists of the **one-dimensional wave equation**:

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} = c^2 \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} \quad c^2 = \frac{T}{\rho}, \quad (4.10)$$

for the unknown deflection $u(x, t)$ of the string, a PDE we have just obtained, and some **additional conditions**, which we will now derive. As the string is fastened at the ends $x = 0$ and $x = L$ as previously mentioned, we have the two **(2) boundary conditions**:

$$u(0, t) = 0, \quad u(L, t) = 0, \quad \text{for all } t \geq 0. \quad (4.11)$$

In addition, the form of the motion of the string will depend on its **initial deflection** (deflection at time $t = 0$), call it $f(x)$, and on its **initial velocity** (velocity at $t = 0$), call it $g(x)$.

We therefore have the two **(2) initial conditions**:

$$u(x, 0) = f(x), \quad u_t(x, 0) = u_t(x, 0) = g(x) \quad (0 \leq x \leq L) \quad (4.12)$$

where $u_t = \partial u / \partial t$. We now have to find a solution of the PDE Eq. (4.10) satisfying the conditions Eq. (4.11) and Eq. (4.12). This will be the solution of our problem. We shall do this in three **(3) steps**, as follows.

1. Using Separation of Variable¹⁰ setting $u(x, t) = F(x) G(t)$, we obtain from Eq. (4.10) two **(2) ODEs**

¹⁰This method is also known in literature as the product method.

■ one for $F(x)$ and,

■ other one for $G(t)$.

2. We determine solutions of these ODEs that satisfy the boundary conditions Eq. (4.11).
3. Finally, using **Fourier series**, we compose the solutions found in the previous step to obtain a solution of Eq. (4.10) satisfying both Eq. (4.11) and Eq. (4.12), that is, the solution of our model of the vibrating string.

Two ODEs from the Wave Equation

In the **method of separating variables**, we determine solutions of the wave equation Eq. (4.10) of the form:

$$u(x, t) = F(x) G(t) \quad (4.13)$$

which are a product of two (2) functions, each depending on only one (1) of the variables; namely x and t .

This is a powerful general method that has various applications in engineering mathematics.

Differentiating Eq. (4.13), we obtain:

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} = F \ddot{G} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} = F'' G$$

where dots denote derivatives with respect to time (t) and primes derivatives with respect to x . By inserting this into the wave equation Eq. (4.10) we have:

$$F \ddot{G} = c^2 F'' G$$

Dividing both sides by $c^2 F G$ and simplifying gives:

$$\frac{\ddot{G}}{c^2 G} = \frac{F''}{F}.$$

The variables are now **separated**, the LHS depending only on t and RHS only on x . Therefore both sides **must be constant** because, if they were variable, then changing t or x would affect only one side, leaving the other unaltered.

Using this logic we can write the aforementioned equation as:

$$\frac{\ddot{G}}{c^2 G} = \frac{F''}{F} = k$$

Multiplying by the denominators gives immediately two (2) ODEs:

$$F'' - kF = 0 \quad (4.14)$$

$$\ddot{G} - c^2 k G = 0 \quad (4.15)$$

Here, the separation constant k is still **arbitrary**.

Applying the Boundary Conditions

We now determine solutions F and G of Eq. (4.14) so $u = FG$ satisfies the boundary conditions given in 4.11, that is:

$$u(0, t) = F(0) G(t) = 0, \quad u(L, t) = F(L) G(t) = 0 \quad \text{for all } t. \quad (4.16)$$

We first solve Eq. (4.14). If $G = 0$, then $u = FG = 0$, which is of no interest. Hence $G \neq 0$, and then by Eq. (4.16),

$$F(0) = 0, \quad F(L) = 0. \quad (4.17)$$

We show that k **must be negative**. For $k = 0$ the general solution of Eq. (4.14) is $F = ax + b$, and from Eq. (4.17) we obtain $a = b = 0$, so that $F = 0$ and $u = FG \equiv 0$, which is of no interest. For positive $k = \mu^2$ a general solution of Eq. (4.14) is:

$$F = Ae^{\mu x} + Be^{-\mu x}$$

and from Eq. (4.17) we obtain $F \equiv 0$ as before.¹¹ Hence we are left with the possibility of choosing k as negative, say, $k = -p^2$. Then Eq. (4.14) becomes $F'' + p^2 F = 0$ and has as a general solution:

¹¹Verification is left for the reader as exercise.

$$F(x) = A \cos px + B \sin px.$$

From this and Eq. (4.17) we have:

$$F(0) = A = 0 \quad \text{and then} \quad F(L) = B \sin pL = 0$$

We must take $B \neq 0$ since otherwise $F = 0$. Hence $\sin pL = 0$. Therefore:

$$pL = n\pi, \quad \text{so that} \quad p = \frac{n\pi}{L} \quad (n \text{ is an integer}) \quad (4.18)$$

These solutions satisfy¹² Eq. (4.17).

¹²For negative integer n we obtain essentially the same solutions, except for a minus sign, as $\sin(-\alpha) = -\sin \alpha$.

We now solve Eq. (4.15) with $k = -p^2 = -(n\pi/L)^2$ resulting from Eq. (4.18), that is,

$$\ddot{G} + \lambda_n^2 G = 0 \quad \text{where} \quad \lambda_n = cp = \frac{cn\pi}{L}.$$

A general solution is:

$$G_n(t) = B_n \cos \lambda_n t + B_n^* \sin \lambda_n t$$

Therefore, solutions of Eq. (4.10) satisfying Eq. (4.11) are:

$$u_n(x, t) = F_n(x) G_n(t) = G_n(t) F_n(x),$$

written out explicitly as:

$$u_n(x, t) = \left(B_n \cos \lambda_n t + B_n^* \sin \lambda_n t \right) \sin \frac{n\pi}{L} x \quad \text{where} \quad n = 1, 2, \dots \quad (4.19)$$

These functions are called the eigenfunctions¹³, and the values $\lambda_n = cn\pi/L$ are called the **eigenvalues**, or *characteristic values*, of the vibrating string.

¹³If you remember **Higher Mathematics I** these are also called characteristic functions.

The set $\{\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots\}$ is called the **spectrum**.

Discussion of Eigenfunctions

We see that each u_n represents a **harmonic motion** having the **frequency** of

$$\frac{\lambda_n}{2\pi} = \frac{cn}{2L} \quad \text{Hz.}$$

This motion is called the n^{th} **normal mode** of the string. The first normal mode is known as the **fundamental mode** ($n = 1$), and others are known as overtones.¹⁴ Since in Eq. (4.19),

¹⁴From a music point, they give the octave, octave plus fifth etc.

$$\sin \frac{n\pi x}{L} = 0 \quad \text{at} \quad x = \frac{L}{n}, \frac{2L}{n}, \dots, \frac{n-1}{n}L,$$

¹⁵This value also includes the fixed endpoints.

the n^{th} normal mode has $n - 1$ amount of **nodes**, that is, points of the string that do not move¹⁵ which can be observed in **Fig. 4.2**.

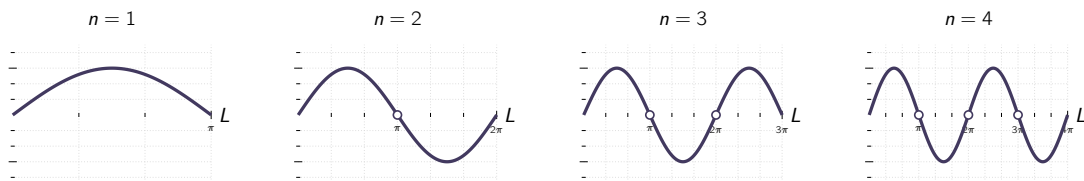


Figure 4.2: The normal modes of the vibrating string.

Fig. 4.3 shows the 2^{nd} normal mode for various values of t . At any instant the string has the form of a sine wave. When the left part of the string is moving down, the other half is moving up, and conversely.

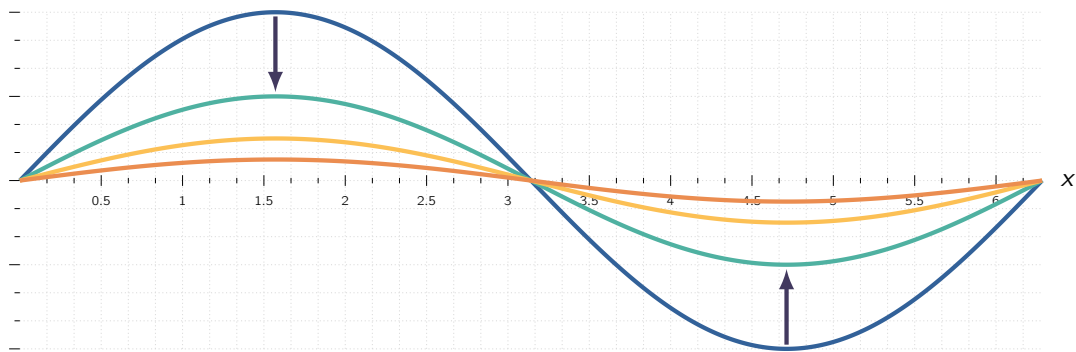


Figure 4.3: Second normal mode for various values of t .

For the other modes the situation is similar.

Information: Tuning an Instrument

Tuning is done by changing the tension T . Our formula for the frequency $\lambda_n/2\pi = cn/2L$ of u_n with $c = \sqrt{T/\rho}$ confirms that effect as it shows that the frequency is proportional to the tension T cannot be increased indefinitely.

Finishing Off - Using Fourier Series

The eigenfunctions in Eq. (4.19) satisfy the wave equation Eq. (4.10) and the boundary conditions¹⁶ given in Eq. (4.11). A single u_n will generally **NOT** satisfy the initial conditions given in Eq. (4.12). But since the wave equation Eq. (4.10) is both **linear** and **homogeneous**, it follows from Theorem of superposition:

¹⁶Remember, the string is tied in both ends.

The sum of finitely many solutions u_n is a solution of Eq. (4.10).

For us to obtain a solution that also satisfies the initial conditions Eq. (4.12), consider the infinite series:¹⁷

¹⁷with $\lambda_n = c\pi/L$ as before.

$$u(x, t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} u_n(x, t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left(B_n \cos \lambda_n t + B_n^* \sin \lambda_n t \right) \sin \frac{n\pi}{L} x \quad (4.20)$$

Satisfying Initial Condition (a) From Eq. (4.20) and Eq. (4.12)(a), we obtain the following:

$$u(x, 0) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} B_n \frac{n\pi}{L} x = f(x) \quad (0 \leq x \leq L). \quad (4.21)$$

Therefore we must choose the B_n 's so that $u(x, 0)$ becomes the **Fourier sine series** of $f(x)$.

$$B_n = \frac{2}{L} \int_0^L f(x) \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L} dx, \quad n = 1, 2, \dots \quad (4.22)$$

Satisfying Initial Condition (b) By differentiating Eq. (4.20) with respect to t and using Eq. (4.12)(b), we obtain:

$$\begin{aligned} \left. \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} \right|_{t=0} &= \left[\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left(-B_n \cos \lambda_n t + B_n^* \sin \lambda_n t \right) \sin \frac{n\pi}{L} x \right] \Big|_{t=0} \\ &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} B_n^* \lambda_n \sin \frac{n\pi}{L} x = g(x). \end{aligned}$$

Therefore we must choose the B_n^* 's so that for $t = 0$ the derivative $\partial u / \partial t$ becomes the Fourier sine series of $g(x)$. Therefore using Fourier analysis:

$$B_n^* \lambda_n = \frac{2}{L} \int_0^L g(x) \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L} dx.$$

Since $\lambda_n = c n \pi / L$, we obtain by division:

$$B_n^* = \frac{2}{c n \pi} \int_0^L g(x) \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L} dx, \quad n = 1, 2, \dots \quad (4.23)$$

Result Our discussion shows that $u(x, t)$ given by Eq. (4.20) with coefficients Eq. (4.22) and Eq. (4.23) is a solution of Eq. (4.10) that satisfies all the conditions in Eq. (4.11) and Eq. (4.12), provided the series Eq. (4.20) converges and so do the series obtained by differentiating Eq. (4.20) twice termwise with respect to x and t and have the sums $\partial^2 u / \partial x^2$ and $\partial^2 u / \partial t^2$, respectively, which are **continuous**.

Reworking Eq. (4.20) According to our derivation, the solution Eq. (4.20) is at first a purely formal expression, but we shall now establish it. For the sake of simplicity we consider only the case when the initial velocity $g(x)$ is identically zero. Then the B_n^* are zero, and Eq. (4.20) reduces to:

$$u(x, t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} B_n \cos \lambda_n t \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L} \quad \text{and} \quad \lambda_n = \frac{cn\pi}{L}. \quad (4.24)$$

It is possible to **sum this series**, that is, to write the result in a closed or finite form.

For this purpose we use the formula:

$$\cos \frac{cn\pi}{L} t \sin \frac{n\pi}{L} x = \frac{1}{2} \left[\sin \left\{ \frac{n\pi}{L} (x - ct) \right\} + \sin \left\{ \frac{n\pi}{L} (x + ct) \right\} \right]$$

Consequently, we may write Eq. (4.24) in the form:

$$u(x, t) = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} B_n \sin \left\{ \frac{n\pi}{L} (x - ct) \right\} + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} B_n \sin \left\{ \frac{n\pi}{L} (x + ct) \right\}$$

These two (2) series are those obtained by substituting $x - ct$ and $x + ct$, respectively, for the variable x in the Fourier sine series given in Eq. (4.21) for $f(x)$. Therefore:

$$u(x, t) = \frac{1}{2} \left[f^*(x - ct) + f^*(x + ct) \right] \quad (4.25)$$

where f^* is the **odd** periodic extension of f with the period $2L$ (Fig. 289). As the initial deflection $f(x)$ is continuous on the interval $0 \leq x \leq L$ and zero at the endpoints, it follows from Eq. (4.25) that $u(x, t)$ is a continuous function of both variables x and t for all values of the variables. By differentiating Eq. (4.25) we see that $u(x, t)$ is a solution of Eq. (4.7), provided $f(x)$ is **twice differentiable** on the interval $0 < x < L$, and has one-sided second derivatives at $x = 0$ and $x = L$, which are zero. Under these conditions $u(x, t)$ is established as a solution of Eq. (4.7), satisfying both (2) and (3) with $g(x) = 0$.

¹⁸as a reminder, a piecewise function is a function whose domain is partitioned into several intervals on which the function may be defined differently.

Generalised Solution If $f'(x)$ and $f''(x)$ are merely piecewise continuous,¹⁸ or if those one-sided derivatives are not zero, then for each t there will be finitely many values of x at which the second derivatives of u appearing in (1) do not exist. Except at these points the wave equation will still be satisfied. We may then regard $u(x, t)$ as a “generalized solution” as it is called, that is, as solution in a broader sense. For instance, the “generalized solution” is an Example 1 (below) leads to a generalized solution.

Physical Information of the Solution Eq. (4.25) The graph of $f^*(x - ct)$ is obtained from the graph of $f^*(x)$ by shifting the latter ct units to the right (Fig. 290). This means that $f^*(x - ct)$ ($c > 0$) represents a wave that is traveling to the right as t increases. Similarly, $f^*(x + ct)$ represents a wave that is traveling to the left, and $u(x, t)$ is the superposition of these two (2) waves.

4.4 The Wave Equation - D'Alembert's Solution

It is interesting that the solution Eq. (4.25), of the wave equation:

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} = c^2 \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} \quad \text{where} \quad c^2 = \frac{T}{\rho}, \quad (4.26)$$

can be immediately obtained by transforming Eq. (4.26) in a suitable way, namely, by introducing the new independent variables:

$$v = x + ct \quad \text{and} \quad w = x - ct. \quad (4.27)$$

This allows us to transform u to a function of v and w . The derivatives in Eq. (4.26) can now be expressed in terms of derivatives with respect to v and w by the use of the chain rule.

Information: Chain Rule

The chain rule is a formula which expresses the derivative of the composition of two (2) differentiable functions f and g in terms of the derivatives of f and g .

Denoting partial derivatives by subscripts (i.e., $u_x = du/dx$), we see from Eq. (4.27) that $v_x = 1$ and $w_x = 1$. For simplicity let us denote $u(x, t)$, as a function of v and w , by the same letter u . Then

$$u_x = u_v v_x + u_w w_x = u_v + u_w.$$

We now apply the chain rule to the RHS. We assume all partial derivatives involved are continuous, so that $u_{vw} = u_{wv}$. As defined previously, $v_x = 1$ and $w_x = 1$. This allows us to write:

$$u_{xx} = (u_v + u_w)_x = (u_v + u_w)_v v_x + (u_v + u_w)_w w_x = u_{vv} + 2u_{vw} + u_{ww}.$$

Transforming the other derivative in Eq. (4.26) by the same procedure, we find:

$$u_{tt} = c^2 (u_{vv} - 2u_{vw} + u_{ww})$$

By inserting these two (2) results in Eq. (4.26) we get:

$$u_{vw} \equiv \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial w \partial v} = 0 \quad (4.28)$$

The point of the present method is that Eq. (4.28) can be readily solved by two (2) successive integrations, first with respect to w and then with respect to v . This gives

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial v} = h(v) \quad \text{and} \quad u = \int h(v) dv + \Psi(w)$$

Here $h(v)$ and $\Psi(w)$ are arbitrary functions of v and w , respectively. Since the integral is a function of v , say, $\phi(v)$, the solution is of the form $u = \phi(v) + \psi(w)$. In terms of x and t , by Eq. (4.27), we thus have

$$u(x, t) = \phi(x + ct) + \psi(x - ct) \quad (4.29)$$

This is known as Alembert's solution¹⁹ of the wave equation Eq. (4.26).

Its derivation was much more elegant than the method we tried to do previously, but d'Alembert's method is special, whereas the use of Fourier series applies to various equations, as we shall see.



¹⁹ Jean-Baptiste le Rond d'Alembert (1717 - 1783) was a French mathematician, mechanician, physicist, philosopher, and music theorist. Until 1759 he was, together with Denis Diderot, a co-editor of the Encyclopédie (a general encyclopedia published in France between 1751 and 1772). D'Alembert's formula for obtaining solutions to the wave equation is named after him. The wave equation is sometimes referred to as d'Alembert's equation, and the fundamental theorem of algebra is named after d'Alembert in French.

4.4.1 D'Alembert's Solution Satisfying the Initial Conditions

We shall start by writing the necessary initial conditions:

$$x(x, 0) = f(x), \quad (4.30a)$$

$$u_t(x, 0) = g(x). \quad (4.30b)$$

These are the same as Eq. (4.12) from the previous section. By differentiating Eq. (4.29) we have:

$$u_t(x, t) = c\phi'(x + ct) - c\psi'(x - ct) \quad (4.31)$$

where primes denote derivatives with respect to the entire arguments $x + ct$ and $x - ct$, respectively, and the minus sign comes from the chain rule. From Eq. (4.29) - Eq. (4.31) we have:

$$u(x, 0) = \phi(x) + \psi(x) = f(x), \quad (4.32)$$

$$u_t(x, 0) = c\phi'(x) + c\psi'(x) = g(x). \quad (4.33)$$

Dividing Eq. (4.33) by c and integrating with respect to x , we obtain:

$$\phi(x) - \psi(x) = k(x_0) + \frac{1}{c} \int_{x_0}^x g(s) ds, \quad \text{and} \quad k(x_0) = \phi(x_0) - \psi(x_0). \quad (4.34)$$

If we add Eq. (4.34) to Eq. (4.32), then ψ drops out and division by 2 gives:

$$\phi(x) = \frac{1}{2}f(x) + \frac{1}{2c} \int_{x_0}^x g(s) ds + \frac{1}{2}k(x_0). \quad (4.35)$$

Similarly, subtraction of Eq. (4.34) from Eq. (4.32) and division by 2 gives:

$$\psi(x) = \frac{1}{2}f(x) + \frac{1}{2c} \int_{x_0}^x g(s) ds - \frac{1}{2}k(x_0). \quad (4.36)$$

In Eq. (4.35) we replace x by $x + ct$; we then get an integral from x_0 to $x + ct$. In Eq. (4.36) we replace x by $x - ct$ and get minus an integral from x_0 to $x - ct$ or plus an integral from $x - ct$ to x_0 . Therefore, the addition of $\phi(x + ct)$ and $\phi(x - ct)$ gives us $u(x, t)$ in the form

$$u(x, t) = \frac{1}{2} [f(x + ct) + f(x - ct)] + \frac{1}{2c} \int_{x-ct}^{x+ct} g(s) ds. \quad (4.37)$$

If the initial velocity is zero, we see that this reduces to

$$u(x, t) = \frac{1}{2} [f(x + ct) + f(x - ct)],$$

in agreement with Eq. (4.25) from the previous section. It is possible to show that because of the boundary conditions given in Eq. (4.11), the function f must be odd and must have the period $2L$. Our result shows that the two initial conditions determine the solution **uniquely**.

4.4.2 Characteristics, Types, and Normal Forms of PDEs

The idea of d'Alembert's solution is just a special instance of the **method of characteristics**. This concerns PDEs of the form:²⁰

²⁰as well as PDEs in more than two variables.

$$Au_{xx} + 2Bu_{xy} + Cu_{yy} = F(x, y, u, u_x, u_y) \quad (4.38)$$

Eq. (4.38) is called **quasi-linear** as it is linear in the highest derivatives (but may be arbitrary otherwise). There are three types of PDEs Eq. (4.38), depending on the discriminant $AC - B^2$, as follows.:

Type	Defining Condition	Examples
Hyperbolic	$AC - B^2 < 0$	Wave Equation
Parabolic	$AC - B^2 = 0$	Heat Equation
Elliptic	$AC - B^2 > 0$	Laplace Equation

Table 4.1: Classification of PDEs.

Note that Eq. (4.1) and Eq. (4.2) given in the introduction sections involve t , but to have y as in Eq. (4.38), we set $y = ct$ in Eq. (4.1), obtaining

$$u_{tt} - c^2 u_{xx} = c^2 (u_{yy} - u_{xx}) = 0.$$

And in Eq. (4.2) we set $y = c^2 t$, so that

$$u_t - c^2 u_{xx} = c^2 (u_{yy} - u_{xx}).$$

A, B, C can be functions of x, y , so that a PDE may be of **mixed type**, that is, of different type in different regions of the xy -plane. An important mixed-type PDE is the Tricomi equation²¹.

Transformation of Eq. (4.38) to Normal Form The normal forms of Eq. (4.38) and the corresponding transformations depend on the type of the PDE. They are obtained by solving the **characteristic equation** of Eq. (4.38), which is the ODE:

$$Ay'^2 - 2By' + C = 0 \quad (4.39)$$

where $y' = dy/dx$.²² The solutions of Eq. (4.39) are called the **characteristics** of Eq. (4.38), and we write them in the form $\Phi(x, y) = \text{const}$ and $\Psi(x, y) = \text{const}$.



²¹The Euler - Tricomi equation is a linear partial differential equation useful in the study of transonic flow. It is named after mathematicians Leonhard Euler and Francesco Giacomo Tricomi

$$u_{xx} + xu_{yy} = 0.$$

It is elliptic in the half plane $x > 0$, parabolic at $x = 0$ and hyperbolic in the half plane $x < 0$.

²²note $-2B$, not $+2B$.

Then the transformations giving new variables v, w instead of x, y and the normal forms of Eq. (4.38) are as follows:

Type	Defining Condition	Examples
Hyperbolic	$v = \Phi$ and $w = \Psi$	$u_{vw} = F_1$
Parabolic	$v = x$ and $w = \Psi = \Phi$	$u_{ww} = F_2$
Elliptic	$v = \frac{1}{2}(\Phi + \Psi)$ and $\frac{1}{2i}(\Phi - \Psi)$	$u_{vv} + u_{ww} = F_3$

Table 4.2: Redefining the PDEs

Here, $\Phi = \Phi(x, y)$, $\Psi = \Psi(x, y)$, $F_1 = F_1(v, w, u, u_v, u_w)$, etc., and we denote u as a function of v, w again by u , for simplicity. We see that the normal form of a hyperbolic PDE is as in d'Alembert's solution. In the parabolic case we get just one family of solutions $\Phi = \Psi$.

In the elliptic case, $i = \sqrt{-1}$, and the characteristics are complex and are of minor interest.

4.5 The Heat Equation

After the wave equation, we now derive and discuss the next important PDE, the **heat equation**, which governs the temperature u in a body in space.²³ We obtain this model of temperature distribution under the following physical assumptions:

1. The **specific heat** (σ) and the **density** (ρ) of the material of the body are constant.²⁴
2. Experiment shows that, in a body, heat flows in the direction of **decreasing** temperature, and the rate of flow is **proportional to the gradient of the temperature**.

That is, the velocity \mathbf{v} of the heat flow in the body is of the form:

$$\mathbf{v} = -K \nabla u, \quad (4.40)$$

where $u(x, y, z, t)$ is the temperature at a point (x, y, z) and time t .

3. The **thermal conductivity** K is **constant**, as is the case for homogeneous material and non-extreme temperatures.

Under these assumptions we can model heat flow as follows.

Let T be a region in the body bounded by a surface S with outer **unit normal vector** \mathbf{n} such that the divergence theorem applies. Then, we can say:

$$\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{n}$$

is the component of \mathbf{v} in the direction of \mathbf{n} . Therefore:

$$|\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{n} \Delta A|$$

is the amount of heat

■ **leaving** T if $\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{n} > 0$ at some point P of S , or

■ **entering** T if $\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{n} < 0$ at some point P of S

per unit time through a small portion ΔS of S of area ΔA . Therefore, the total amount of heat that flows across S from T is given by the surface integral:

$$\iint_S \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{n} dA.$$

Using Gauss's theorem,²⁵ we now convert our surface integral into a volume integral over the region T . Because of Eq. (4.40) this gives:

$$\iint_S \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{n} dA = -K \iint_S (\nabla u) \cdot \mathbf{n} dA = \quad (4.41)$$

$$-K \iiint_T \nabla \cdot \nabla u \, dx \, dy \, dz = -K \iiint_T \nabla^2 u \, dx \, dy \, dz. \quad (4.42)$$

²³The theory of the heat equation was first developed by Joseph Fourier in 1822 for the purpose of modeling how a quantity such as heat diffuses through a given region. This means no heat is produced or disappears in the body.

²⁵i.e., the divergence theorem.

Here,

$$\nabla^2 u = \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial z^2}$$

is the **Laplacian** of u . On the other hand, the total amount of heat in T is

$$H = \iiint_S \sigma \rho u \, dx \, dy \, dz$$

with σ and ρ as the same variables as defined before. Therefore the time rate of decrease of H is:

$$-\frac{\partial H}{\partial t} = - \iiint_T \sigma \rho \frac{du}{dt} \, dx \, dy \, dz.$$

This must be equal to the amount of heat leaving T because no heat is produced or disappears in the body.

From Eq. (4.41) we thus obtain:

$$- \iiint_T \sigma \rho \frac{du}{dt} \, dx \, dy \, dz = -K \iiint_T \nabla^2 u \, dx \, dy \, dz.$$

or (divide by $-\sigma\rho$)

$$- \iiint_T \left(\frac{du}{dt} - c^2 \nabla^2 u \right) \, dx \, dy \, dz = 0 \quad c^2 = \frac{K}{\sigma\rho}$$

As this holds for **any region** T in the body, the integrand must be zero everywhere.²⁶ That is,

²⁶This is on the condition that the integrand is continuous.

$$\frac{du}{dt} = c^2 \nabla^2 u \quad c^2 = K/\rho\sigma \quad (4.43)$$

This is the **heat equation**, the fundamental PDE modeling heat flow.

It gives the temperature $u(x, y, z, t)$ in a body of homogeneous material in space. The constant c^2 is the *thermal diffusivity*. K is the *thermal conductivity*, or the *specific heat*, and ρ the *density* of the material of the body. $\nabla^2 u$ is the Laplacian of u and, with respect to the Cartesian coordinates x, y, z , is

$$\nabla^2 u = \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial z^2}.$$

The heat equation is also called the **diffusion equation** as it also models chemical diffusion processes of one substance or gas into another. Depending on the environment of the scale (micro v. macro) constants may differ but the behaviour stays the same.

4.6 Solving the Heat Equation

²⁷For now we shall only consider the 1D case.

We want to solve the heat equation²⁷ developed previously and give several applications. This is followed much later in this section by an extension of the heat equation to two (2) dimensions.

As an important application of the heat equation, let us first consider the temperature in a long thin metal bar of **constant cross section** and **homogeneous** material, which is oriented along the **x**-axis (Fig. 294) and is **perfectly insulated** laterally, so heat flows in the **x**-direction only.

Besides time, u depends only on x , so that the Laplacian reduces to $u_{xx} = \partial^2 u / \partial x^2$, and the heat equation becomes the **one-dimensional heat equation**

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = c^2 \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} \quad (4.44)$$

This PDE seems to differ slightly from the wave equation, which has a term u_{tt} instead of u_t , but we shall see that this will make the solutions of Eq. (4.44) behave quite differently from those of the wave equation.

We shall solve Eq. (4.44) for some important types of boundary and initial conditions. We begin with the case in which the ends $x = 0$ and $x = L$ of the bar are kept at temperature zero, so that we have the following **boundary conditions**:

$$u(0, t) = 0, \quad u(L, t) = 0, \quad \text{for all } t \geq 0. \quad (4.45)$$

Furthermore, the initial temperature in the bar at time $t = 0$ is given, say, $f(x)$, so we have the **initial condition**:

$$u(x, 0) = f(x) \quad (4.46)$$

Here we assume, of course, $f(x)$ is known. In addition the conditions of $f(0) = 0$ and $f(L) = 0$ must be met because of Eq. (4.45).

²⁸One initial condition will be enough, as opposed to two initial conditions for the wave equation.

We shall determine a solution $u(x, t)$ of Eq. (4.44) satisfying both Eq. (4.45) and Eq. (4.46).²⁸

The solution will mirror that of wave equation quite closely, with first deriving the ODEs using separation of variables and then using Fourier analysis to generate a solution.

Two ODEs from the Heat Equation

Substitution of a product:

$$u(x, t) = F(x) G(t),$$

into Eq. (4.44) gives:

$$F \dot{G} = c^2 F'' G,$$

with $\dot{G} = dG/dt$ and $F'' = d^2F/dx^2$. To separate the variables, we divide both sides of Eq. (4.44) by $c^2 FG$, which gives us:

$$\frac{\dot{G}}{c^2 G} = \frac{F''}{F}, \quad (4.47)$$

where the LHS depends only on t and the RHS only on x , so both sides must equal a constant k , which was the same argument we used in the solution of the wave equation. We may show that for $k = 0$ or $k > 0$ the only solution $u = FG$ satisfying Eq. (4.45) is $u \equiv 0$.

For negative $k = -p^2$ we have from Eq. (4.47),

$$\frac{\dot{G}}{c^2 G} = \frac{F''}{F} = -p^2.$$

Multiplication by the denominators immediately gives the two (2) ODEs:

$$F'' + p^2 F = 0, \quad (4.48)$$

$$\dot{G} + c^2 p^2 G = 0. \quad (4.49)$$

Satisfying the Boundary Conditions

We start first by solving Eq. (4.48). A general solution to this ODE is:

$$F(x) = A \cos px + B \sin px. \quad (4.50)$$

From the boundary conditions given in Eq. (4.45) it follows that:

$$u(0, t) = F(0) G(t) = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad u(L, t) = F(L) G(t) = 0.$$

As $G \equiv 0$ would give $u = 0$,²⁹ we require $F(0) = 0$, $F(L) = 0$ and get $F(0) = A = 0$ by Eq. (4.50) and then $F(L) = B \sin pL = 0$, with $B \neq 0$ to avoid $F = 0$. We can then write:

$$\sin pL = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad p = \frac{n\pi}{L}, \quad n = 1, 2, \dots$$

Setting $B = 1$, we therefore, obtain the following solutions of Eq. (4.48) satisfying Eq. (4.45):

$$F_n(x) = \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L}, \quad n = 1, 2, \dots$$

All this was literally the same as in solving the wave equation. From now on it differs as Eq. (4.49) differs.

$$\dot{G} + \lambda_n^2 G = 0 \quad \text{where} \quad \lambda_n = \frac{cn\pi}{L}.$$

²⁹ These would be trivial solution which have no practical applications.

This ODE has the general solution:

$$G_n(t) = B_n e^{-\lambda_n^2 t}, \quad \text{where} \quad n = 1, 2, \dots,$$

where B_n is a **constant**. Hence the functions:

$$u_n(x, t) = F_n(x) G_n(t) = B_n \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L} e^{-\lambda_n^2 t}, \quad \text{where} \quad n = 1, 2, \dots, \quad (4.51)$$

are solutions of the heat equation given in Eq. (4.44), satisfying the conditions of Eq. (4.45). These are the **eigenfunctions** of the problem, corresponding to the eigenvalues:

$$\lambda_n = \frac{cn\pi}{L}.$$

Solving the Entire Problem

So far we have solutions a set of solutions given in Eq. (4.51), satisfying the boundary conditions presented in Eq. (4.45). To obtain a solution which also satisfies the initial condition Eq. (4.46), we consider a series of these eigenfunctions:

$$u(x, t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} u_n(x, t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} B_n \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L} e^{-\lambda_n^2 t}, \quad \text{where} \quad \left(\lambda_n = \frac{cn\pi}{L} \right). \quad (4.52)$$

From this and Eq. (4.46), we have:

$$u(x, 0) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} B_n \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L} = f(x)$$

Therefore for Eq. (4.52) to satisfy Eq. (4.46), the B_n 's must be the coefficients of the Fourier sine series. Therefore:

$$B_n = \frac{2}{L} \int_0^L f(x) \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L} dx \quad (4.53)$$

The solution of our problem can be established, assuming that $f(x)$ is **piecewise continuous** on the interval $0 \leq x \leq L$ and has one-sided derivatives at all interior points of that interval. That is, under these assumptions the series Eq. (4.52) with coefficients given in Eq. (4.53) is the solution of our physical problem.

Because of the exponential factor, all the terms in Eq. (4.52) approach zero as t approaches infinity. The rate of decay increases with n .

4.6.1 Solving 2D Heat Equation

We shall now extend our discussion from one to two space dimensions and consider the two-dimensional heat equation:

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = c^2 \nabla^2 u = c^2 \left(\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} \right)$$

for steady, time-independent problems. Then $\partial u / \partial t = 0$ and the heat equation reduces to **Laplace's equation**

$$\nabla^2 u = \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} = 0 \quad (4.54)$$

A heat problem then consists of this PDE to be considered in some region R of the xy -plane and a given boundary condition on the boundary curve C of R . This is a Boundary Value Problem (BVP).

Let's look at the different types of BVP.

Theory 4.29: Boundary Value Problem Types

Depending on what is imposed on the PDE we can classify these under three (3) categories:

- First BVP or Dirichlet Problem if u is prescribed on C ,
- Second BVP or Neumann Problem if the normal derivative u_n is prescribed on C ,
- Third BVP or Robin Problem if u is prescribed on a portion of C and u_n on the rest of C .

To solve this 2D heat equation, We consider a Dirichlet problem for Laplace's equation given in Eq. (4.54) in a rectangle R , assuming the temperature $u(x, y)$ equals a given function $f(x)$ on the upper side and 0 on the other three sides of the rectangle.

We solve this problem by using separation of variables. Start by substituting

$$u(x, y) = F(x) G(y),$$

into Eq. (4.54) written as $u_{xx} = u_{yy}$, dividing by FG , and equating both sides to a negative constant, we obtain

$$\frac{1}{F} \cdot \frac{d^2 F}{dx^2} = -\frac{1}{G} \cdot \frac{d^2 G}{dy^2} = -k.$$

From this we get

$$\frac{d^2 F}{dx^2} + kF = 0,$$

and the left and right boundary conditions imply

$$F(0) = 0, \quad \text{and} \quad F(a) = 0.$$

This gives $k = (n\pi/a)^2$ and corresponding non-zero solutions,

$$F(x) = F_n(x) = \sin \frac{n\pi}{a} x, \quad \text{where} \quad n = 1, 2, \dots \quad (4.55)$$

The ODE for G with $k = (n\pi/a)^2$ then becomes:

$$\frac{d^2 G}{dy^2} - \left(\frac{n\pi}{a}\right)^2 G = 0.$$

Solutions are:

$$G(y) = G_n(y) = A_n e^{n\pi y/a} + B_n e^{-n\pi y/a}.$$

Now the boundary condition $u = 0$ on the lower side of R implies that $G_n(0) = 0$ which is,

$$G_n(0) = A_n + B_n = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad B_n = -A_n.$$

This gives:

$$G_n(y) = A_n(e^{n\pi y/a} - e^{-n\pi y/a}) = 2A_n \sinh \frac{n\pi y}{a},$$

where \sinh is the hyperbolic sine function. From this and Eq. (4.55), writing $2A_n = A_n^*$, we obtain as the **eigenfunctions** of our problem:

$$u_n(x, y) = F_n(x)G_n(y) = A_n^* \sin \frac{n\pi x}{a} \sinh \frac{n\pi y}{a}. \quad (4.56)$$

These solutions satisfy the boundary condition $u = 0$ on the left, right, and lower sides. To get a solution also satisfying the boundary condition $u(x, b) = f(x)$ on the upper side, we consider the infinite series:

$$u(x, y) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} u_n(x, y)$$

From this and Eq. (4.56) with $y = b$ we obtain:

$$u(x, b) = f(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} A_n^* \sin \frac{n\pi x}{a} \sinh \frac{n\pi b}{a}.$$

We can write this in a more pleasant form:

$$u(x, b) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left(A_n^* \sinh \frac{n\pi b}{a} \right) \sin \frac{n\pi x}{a}.$$

This shows that the expressions in the parentheses must be the Fourier coefficients b_n of $f(x)$, which are calculated as:

$$b_n = A_n^* \sinh \frac{n\pi b}{a} = \frac{2}{a} \int_0^a f(x) \sin \frac{n\pi x}{a} dx.$$

From this and Eq. (4.56) we see that the solution of our problem is:

$$u(x, y) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} u_n(x, y) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} A_n^* \sin \frac{n\pi x}{a} \sinh \frac{n\pi y}{a}, \quad (4.57)$$

where

$$A_n^* = \frac{2}{a \sinh(n\pi b/a)} \int_0^a f(x) \sin \frac{n\pi x}{a} dx. \quad (4.58)$$

Which can be considered the solution to our PDE.

4.7 Heat Conduction in Long Bars

Our discussion of the heat equation given as:

$$\frac{du}{dt} = c^2 \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} \quad (4.59)$$

in the last section extends to bars of **infinite** length, which are good models of very long bars or wires.³⁰ Then the role of Fourier series in the solution process will be taken by **Fourier integrals**.

³⁰such as a wire of length, say, 100 m.

Let us illustrate the method by solving Eq. (4.59) for a bar that extends to infinity on both sides.³¹

³¹And for simplicity we assume the bars are covered in perfect isolation around so no heat enters or exits.

Then we do not have boundary conditions, but only the initial condition.

$$u(x, 0) = f(x) \quad \text{where} \quad -\infty < x < \infty, \quad (4.60)$$

where $f(x)$ is the given initial temperature of the bar. To solve this problem, we start as in the last section, substituting:

$$u(x, t) = F(x) G(t),$$

into Eq. (4.59). This gives us two (2) ODEs:

$$F'' + p^2 F = 0, \quad (4.61)$$

$$\dot{G} + c^2 p^2 G = 0. \quad (4.62)$$

Solutions are

$$F(x) = A \cos px + B \sin px \quad \text{and} \quad G(t) = e^{-c^2 p^2 t},$$

respectively, where A and B are any constants. Hence a solution of Eq. (4.59) is

$$u(x, t; p) = FG = (A \cos px + B \sin px) e^{-c^2 p^2 t}. \quad (4.63)$$

Here we had to choose the separation constant k negative, $k = -p^2$, because positive values of k would lead to an increasing exponential function in Eq. (4.63), which has no physical meaning.

4.7.1 Use of Fourier Integrals

Any series of functions given in Eq. (4.63), found in the usual manner by taking p as multiples of a fixed number, would lead to a function that is periodic in x when $t = 0$. However, since $f(x)$ in Eq. (4.60) is **NOT** assumed to be periodic, it is natural to use **Fourier integrals** instead of Fourier series.

Also, A and B in Eq. (4.63) are arbitrary and we may regard them as functions of p , writing $A = A(p)$ and $B = B(p)$. Now, since the heat equation given in Eq. (4.59) is linear and homogeneous, the function:

$$u(x, t) = \int_0^\infty u(x, y; p) dp = \int_0^\infty [A(p) \cos px + B(p) \sin px] e^{-c^2 p^2 t} dp, \quad (4.64)$$

is then a solution of Eq. (4.59), provided this integral exists and can be differentiated twice with respect to x and once with respect to t .

Determination of Coefficients

From Eq. (4.64) and Eq. (4.60) we get:

$$u(x, 0) = \int_0^\infty [A(p) \cos px + B(p) \sin px] dp = f(x). \quad (4.65)$$

This gives $A(p)$ and $B(p)$ in terms of $f(x)$. Using Fourier analysis we also have:

$$A(p) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(v) \cos pv dv, \quad \text{and} \quad B(p) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(v) \sin pv dv. \quad (4.66)$$

Our Fourier integral given in Eq. (4.65) with these $A(p)$ and $B(p)$ can be written:

$$u(x, 0) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^\infty \left[\int_{-\infty}^\infty f(v) \cos(px - pv) dv \right] dp.$$

Similarly, Eq. (4.64) in this section becomes:

$$u(x, t) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^\infty \left[\int_{-\infty}^\infty f(v) \cos(px - pv) e^{-c^2 p^2 t} dv \right] dp.$$

Assuming that we may reverse the order of integration, we obtain

$$u(x, t) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(v) \left[\int_0^\infty e^{-c^2 p^2 t} \cos(px - pv) dp \right] dv. \quad (4.67)$$

Then we can evaluate the inner integral by using the formula

$$\int_0^\infty e^{-s^2} \cos 2bs ds = \frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{2} e^{-b^2}. \quad (4.68)$$

This takes the form of our inner integral if we choose $p = s/(c\sqrt{t})$ as a new variable of integration and set:

$$b = \frac{x - v}{2c\sqrt{t}}.$$

Then $2bs = (x - v)p$ and $ds = c\sqrt{t}dp$, so that Eq. (4.68) becomes:

$$\int_0^\infty e^{-c^2 p^2 t} \cos(px - pv) dp = \frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{2c\sqrt{t}} \exp \left[-\frac{(x - v)^2}{4c^2 t} \right]$$

By inserting this result into Eq. (4.67) we obtain the representation:

$$u(x, t) = \frac{1}{2c\sqrt{\pi t}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(v) \exp\left(-\frac{(x-v)^2}{4c^2 t}\right) dv. \quad (4.69)$$

Taking $z = (v - x)/(2c\sqrt{t})$ as a variable of integration, we get the alternative form:

$$u(x, t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x + 2cz\sqrt{t}) e^{-z^2} dz. \quad (4.70)$$

If $f(x)$ is bounded for all values of x and integrable in every finite interval, it can be shown that the function Eq. (4.69) or Eq. (4.70) satisfies Eq. (4.59) and Eq. (4.60). Therefore this function is the required solution in the present case.

Part III

Appendix

Appendix A

Tables

Table of Contents

A.1	Introduction	133
A.2	Special Functions	134
A.3	CDF Normal Distribution	137
A.4	Student-t Distribution	139
A.5	Chi-Square Distribution	141
A.6	F-Distribution	143

A.1 Introduction

The following are tables used in solving the exercises present in this book.

A.2 Special Functions

A.2.1 Bessel Function

Table A.1: Particular values of the Bessel function.

x	$J_0(x)$	$J_1(x)$	x	$J_0(x)$	$J_1(x)$	x	$J_0(x)$	$J_1(x)$
0.0	1.0	0.0	3.0	-0.2601	0.3391	6.0	0.1506	-0.2767
0.1	0.9975	0.0499	3.1	-0.2921	0.3009	6.1	0.1773	-0.2559
0.2	0.99	0.0995	3.2	-0.3202	0.2613	6.2	0.2017	-0.2329
0.3	0.9776	0.1483	3.3	-0.3443	0.2207	6.3	0.2238	-0.2081
0.4	0.9604	0.196	3.4	-0.3643	0.1792	6.4	0.2433	-0.1816
0.5	0.9385	0.2423	3.5	-0.3801	0.1374	6.5	0.2601	-0.1538
0.6	0.912	0.2867	3.6	-0.3918	0.0955	6.6	0.274	-0.125
0.7	0.8812	0.329	3.7	-0.3992	0.0538	6.7	0.2851	-0.0953
0.8	0.8463	0.3688	3.8	-0.4026	0.0128	6.8	0.2931	-0.0652
0.9	0.8075	0.4059	3.9	-0.4018	-0.0272	6.9	0.2981	-0.0349
1.0	0.7652	0.4401	4.0	-0.3971	-0.066	7.0	0.3001	-0.0047
1.1	0.7196	0.4709	4.1	-0.3887	-0.1033	7.1	0.2991	0.0252
1.2	0.6711	0.4983	4.2	-0.3766	-0.1386	7.2	0.2951	0.0543
1.3	0.6201	0.522	4.3	-0.361	-0.1719	7.3	0.2882	0.0826
1.4	0.5669	0.5419	4.4	-0.3423	-0.2028	7.4	0.2786	0.1096
1.5	0.5118	0.5579	4.5	-0.3205	-0.2311	7.5	0.2663	0.1352
1.6	0.4554	0.5699	4.6	-0.2961	-0.2566	7.6	0.2516	0.1592
1.7	0.398	0.5778	4.7	-0.2693	-0.2791	7.7	0.2346	0.1813
1.8	0.34	0.5815	4.8	-0.2404	-0.2985	7.8	0.2154	0.2014
1.9	0.2818	0.5812	4.9	-0.2097	-0.3147	7.9	0.1944	0.2192
2.0	0.2239	0.5767	5.0	-0.1776	-0.3276	8.0	0.1717	0.2346
2.1	0.1666	0.5683	5.1	-0.1443	-0.3371	8.1	0.1475	0.2476
2.2	0.1104	0.556	5.2	-0.1103	-0.3432	8.2	0.1222	0.258
2.3	0.0555	0.5399	5.3	-0.0758	-0.346	8.3	0.096	0.2657
2.4	0.0025	0.5202	5.4	-0.0412	-0.3453	8.4	0.0692	0.2708
2.5	-0.0484	0.4971	5.5	-0.0068	-0.3414	8.5	0.0419	0.2731
2.6	-0.0968	0.4708	5.6	0.027	-0.3343	8.6	0.0146	0.2728

Continued on next page

Table A.1: Particular values of the Bessel function. (Continued)

x	$J_0(x)$	$J_1(x)$	x	$J_0(x)$	$J_1(x)$	x	$J_0(x)$	$J_1(x)$
2.7	-0.1424	0.4416	5.7	0.0599	-0.3241	8.7	-0.0125	0.2697
2.8	-0.185	0.4097	5.8	0.0917	-0.311	8.8	-0.0392	0.2641
2.9	-0.2243	0.3754	5.9	0.122	-0.2951	8.9	-0.0653	0.2559

A.2.2 Gamma Function

Table A.2: Particular values of the Gamma function

α	$\Gamma(\alpha)$	α	$\Gamma(\alpha)$	α	$\Gamma(\alpha)$	α	$\Gamma(\alpha)$	α	$\Gamma(\alpha)$
1.0	1.0	1.2	0.9182	1.4	0.8873	1.6	0.8935	1.8	0.9314
1.02	0.9888	1.22	0.9131	1.42	0.8864	1.62	0.8959	1.82	0.9368
1.04	0.9784	1.24	0.9085	1.44	0.8858	1.64	0.8986	1.84	0.9426
1.06	0.9687	1.26	0.9044	1.46	0.8856	1.66	0.9017	1.86	0.9487
1.08	0.9597	1.28	0.9007	1.48	0.8857	1.68	0.905	1.88	0.9551
1.1	0.9514	1.3	0.8975	1.5	0.8862	1.7	0.9086	1.9	0.9618
1.12	0.9436	1.32	0.8946	1.52	0.887	1.72	0.9126	1.92	0.9688
1.14	0.9364	1.34	0.8922	1.54	0.8882	1.74	0.9168	1.94	0.9761
1.16	0.9298	1.36	0.8902	1.56	0.8896	1.76	0.9214	1.96	0.9837
1.18	0.9237	1.38	0.8885	1.58	0.8914	1.78	0.9262	1.98	0.9917
1.2	0.9182	1.4	0.8873	1.6	0.8935	1.8	0.9314	2.0	1.0

A.2.3 Error Function, Sine and Cosine Integrals

Table A.3: Particular values of error function along with sine and cosine integrals.

x	$\text{erf}(x)$	$\text{Si}(x)$	$\text{ci}(x)$	x	$\text{erf}(x)$	$\text{Si}(x)$	$\text{ci}(x)$
0.0	0.0	0.0	$-\infty$	2.0	0.9953	1.6054	0.423
0.2	0.2227	0.1996	-1.0422	2.2	0.9981	1.6876	0.3751
0.4	0.4284	0.3965	-0.3788	2.4	0.9993	1.7525	0.3173
0.6	0.6039	0.5881	-0.0223	2.6	0.9998	1.8004	0.2533
0.8	0.7421	0.7721	0.1983	2.8	0.9999	1.8321	0.1865
1.0	0.8427	0.9461	0.3374	3.0	1.0	1.8487	0.1196
1.2	0.9103	1.108	0.4205	3.2	1.0	1.8514	0.0553

Continued on next page

Table A.3: Particular values of error function along with sine and cosine integrals. (Continued)

x	$\text{erf}(x)$	$\text{Si}(x)$	$\text{ci}(x)$	x	$\text{erf}(x)$	$\text{Si}(x)$	$\text{ci}(x)$
1.4	0.9523	1.2562	0.462	3.4	1.0	1.8419	-0.0045
1.6	0.9763	1.3892	0.4717	3.6	1.0	1.8219	-0.058
1.8	0.9891	1.5058	0.4568	3.8	1.0	1.7934	-0.1038
2.0	0.9953	1.6054	0.423	4.0	1.0	1.7582	-0.141

A.3 CDF Normal Distribution

Table A.4: Values of z for given values of the distribution function $\Phi(z)$ with $\Phi(-z) = 1 - \Phi(z)$.

z	$\Phi(z)$	z	$\Phi(z)$	z	$\Phi(z)$	z	$\Phi(z)$	z	$\Phi(z)$	z	$\Phi(z)$
0.01	0.504	0.51	0.695	1.01	0.844	1.51	0.934	2.01	0.978	2.51	0.994
0.02	0.508	0.52	0.698	1.02	0.846	1.52	0.936	2.02	0.978	2.52	0.994
0.03	0.512	0.53	0.702	1.03	0.848	1.53	0.937	2.03	0.979	2.53	0.994
0.04	0.516	0.54	0.705	1.04	0.851	1.54	0.938	2.04	0.979	2.54	0.994
0.05	0.52	0.55	0.709	1.05	0.853	1.55	0.939	2.05	0.98	2.55	0.995
0.06	0.524	0.56	0.712	1.06	0.855	1.56	0.941	2.06	0.98	2.56	0.995
0.07	0.528	0.57	0.716	1.07	0.858	1.57	0.942	2.07	0.981	2.57	0.995
0.08	0.532	0.58	0.719	1.08	0.86	1.58	0.943	2.08	0.981	2.58	0.995
0.09	0.536	0.59	0.722	1.09	0.862	1.59	0.944	2.09	0.982	2.59	0.995
0.1	0.54	0.6	0.726	1.1	0.864	1.6	0.945	2.1	0.982	2.6	0.995
0.11	0.544	0.61	0.729	1.11	0.867	1.61	0.946	2.11	0.983	2.61	0.995
0.12	0.548	0.62	0.732	1.12	0.869	1.62	0.947	2.12	0.983	2.62	0.996
0.13	0.552	0.63	0.736	1.13	0.871	1.63	0.948	2.13	0.983	2.63	0.996
0.14	0.556	0.64	0.739	1.14	0.873	1.64	0.949	2.14	0.984	2.64	0.996
0.15	0.56	0.65	0.742	1.15	0.875	1.65	0.951	2.15	0.984	2.65	0.996
0.16	0.564	0.66	0.745	1.16	0.877	1.66	0.952	2.16	0.985	2.66	0.996
0.17	0.567	0.67	0.749	1.17	0.879	1.67	0.953	2.17	0.985	2.67	0.996
0.18	0.571	0.68	0.752	1.18	0.881	1.68	0.954	2.18	0.985	2.68	0.996
0.19	0.575	0.69	0.755	1.19	0.883	1.69	0.954	2.19	0.986	2.69	0.996
0.2	0.579	0.7	0.758	1.2	0.885	1.7	0.955	2.2	0.986	2.7	0.997
0.21	0.583	0.71	0.761	1.21	0.887	1.71	0.956	2.21	0.986	2.71	0.997
0.22	0.587	0.72	0.764	1.22	0.889	1.72	0.957	2.22	0.987	2.72	0.997
0.23	0.591	0.73	0.767	1.23	0.891	1.73	0.958	2.23	0.987	2.73	0.997
0.24	0.595	0.74	0.77	1.24	0.893	1.74	0.959	2.24	0.987	2.74	0.997
0.25	0.599	0.75	0.773	1.25	0.894	1.75	0.96	2.25	0.988	2.75	0.997
0.26	0.603	0.76	0.776	1.26	0.896	1.76	0.961	2.26	0.988	2.76	0.997
0.27	0.606	0.77	0.779	1.27	0.898	1.77	0.962	2.27	0.988	2.77	0.997
0.28	0.61	0.78	0.782	1.28	0.9	1.78	0.962	2.28	0.989	2.78	0.997

Continued on next page

Table A.4: Values of z for given values of the distribution function $\Phi(z)$ with $\Phi(-z) = 1 - \Phi(z)$. (Continued)

z	$\Phi(z)$	z	$\Phi(z)$	z	$\Phi(z)$	z	$\Phi(z)$	z	$\Phi(z)$	z	$\Phi(z)$
0.29	0.614	0.79	0.785	1.29	0.901	1.79	0.963	2.29	0.989	2.79	0.997
0.3	0.618	0.8	0.788	1.3	0.903	1.8	0.964	2.3	0.989	2.8	0.997
0.31	0.622	0.81	0.791	1.31	0.905	1.81	0.965	2.31	0.99	2.81	0.998
0.32	0.626	0.82	0.794	1.32	0.907	1.82	0.966	2.32	0.99	2.82	0.998
0.33	0.629	0.83	0.797	1.33	0.908	1.83	0.966	2.33	0.99	2.83	0.998
0.34	0.633	0.84	0.8	1.34	0.91	1.84	0.967	2.34	0.99	2.84	0.998
0.35	0.637	0.85	0.802	1.35	0.911	1.85	0.968	2.35	0.991	2.85	0.998
0.36	0.641	0.86	0.805	1.36	0.913	1.86	0.969	2.36	0.991	2.86	0.998
0.37	0.644	0.87	0.808	1.37	0.915	1.87	0.969	2.37	0.991	2.87	0.998
0.38	0.648	0.88	0.811	1.38	0.916	1.88	0.97	2.38	0.991	2.88	0.998
0.39	0.652	0.89	0.813	1.39	0.918	1.89	0.971	2.39	0.992	2.89	0.998
0.4	0.655	0.9	0.816	1.4	0.919	1.9	0.971	2.4	0.992	2.9	0.998
0.41	0.659	0.91	0.819	1.41	0.921	1.91	0.972	2.41	0.992	2.91	0.998
0.42	0.663	0.92	0.821	1.42	0.922	1.92	0.973	2.42	0.992	2.92	0.998
0.43	0.666	0.93	0.824	1.43	0.924	1.93	0.973	2.43	0.992	2.93	0.998
0.44	0.67	0.94	0.826	1.44	0.925	1.94	0.974	2.44	0.993	2.94	0.998
0.45	0.674	0.95	0.829	1.45	0.926	1.95	0.974	2.45	0.993	2.95	0.998
0.46	0.677	0.96	0.831	1.46	0.928	1.96	0.975	2.46	0.993	2.96	0.998
0.47	0.681	0.97	0.834	1.47	0.929	1.97	0.976	2.47	0.993	2.97	0.999
0.48	0.684	0.98	0.836	1.48	0.931	1.98	0.976	2.48	0.993	2.98	0.999
0.49	0.688	0.99	0.839	1.49	0.932	1.99	0.977	2.49	0.994	2.99	0.999
0.5	0.691	1.0	0.841	1.5	0.933	2.0	0.977	2.5	0.994	3.0	0.999

A.4 Student-t Distribution

Table A.5: Values of z for given values of the distribution function $F(z)$ with $m = 1 - 10$.

$F(z)$	Degrees of Freedom									
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
0.5	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
0.6	0.32	0.29	0.28	0.27	0.27	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26
0.7	0.73	0.62	0.58	0.57	0.56	0.55	0.55	0.55	0.54	0.54
0.8	1.38	1.06	0.98	0.94	0.92	0.91	0.9	0.89	0.88	0.88
0.9	3.08	1.89	1.64	1.53	1.48	1.44	1.41	1.4	1.38	1.37
0.95	6.31	2.92	2.35	2.13	2.02	1.94	1.89	1.86	1.83	1.81
0.975	12.71	4.3	3.18	2.78	2.57	2.45	2.36	2.31	2.26	2.23
0.99	31.82	6.96	4.54	3.75	3.36	3.14	3.0	2.9	2.82	2.76
0.995	63.66	9.92	5.84	4.6	4.03	3.71	3.5	3.36	3.25	3.17
0.995	63.66	9.92	5.84	4.6	4.03	3.71	3.5	3.36	3.25	3.17
0.999	318.31	22.33	10.21	7.17	5.89	5.21	4.79	4.5	4.3	4.14

Table A.6: Values of z for given values of the distribution function $F(z)$ with $m = 11 - 20$.

$F(z)$	Degrees of Freedom									
	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
0.5	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
0.6	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26
0.7	0.54	0.54	0.54	0.54	0.54	0.54	0.53	0.53	0.53	0.53
0.8	0.88	0.87	0.87	0.87	0.87	0.86	0.86	0.86	0.86	0.86
0.9	1.36	1.36	1.35	1.35	1.34	1.34	1.33	1.33	1.33	1.33
0.95	1.8	1.78	1.77	1.76	1.75	1.75	1.74	1.73	1.73	1.72
0.975	2.2	2.18	2.16	2.14	2.13	2.12	2.11	2.1	2.09	2.09
0.99	2.72	2.68	2.65	2.62	2.6	2.58	2.57	2.55	2.54	2.53
0.995	3.11	3.05	3.01	2.98	2.95	2.92	2.9	2.88	2.86	2.85
0.995	3.11	3.05	3.01	2.98	2.95	2.92	2.9	2.88	2.86	2.85
0.999	4.02	3.93	3.85	3.79	3.73	3.69	3.65	3.61	3.58	3.55

Table A.7: Values of z for given values of the distribution function $F(z)$ with $m = 21 - 30$.

$F(z)$	Degrees of Freedom (m)									
	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30
0.5	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
0.6	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26
0.7	0.53	0.53	0.53	0.53	0.53	0.53	0.53	0.53	0.53	0.53
0.8	0.86	0.86	0.86	0.86	0.86	0.86	0.86	0.85	0.85	0.85
0.9	1.32	1.32	1.32	1.32	1.32	1.31	1.31	1.31	1.31	1.31
0.95	1.72	1.72	1.71	1.71	1.71	1.71	1.7	1.7	1.7	1.7
0.975	2.08	2.07	2.07	2.06	2.06	2.06	2.05	2.05	2.05	2.04
0.99	2.52	2.51	2.5	2.49	2.49	2.48	2.47	2.47	2.46	2.46
0.995	2.83	2.82	2.81	2.8	2.79	2.78	2.77	2.76	2.76	2.75
0.995	2.83	2.82	2.81	2.8	2.79	2.78	2.77	2.76	2.76	2.75
0.999	3.53	3.5	3.48	3.47	3.45	3.43	3.42	3.41	3.4	3.39

A.5 Chi-Square Distribution

Table A.8: Values of z for given values of the distribution function $F(z)$ with $m = 1 - 10$.

$F(z)$	Degrees of Freedom (m)									
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
0.005	0.0	0.01	0.07	0.21	0.41	0.68	0.99	1.34	1.73	2.16
0.01	0.0	0.02	0.11	0.3	0.55	0.87	1.24	1.65	2.09	2.56
0.025	0.0	0.05	0.22	0.48	0.83	1.24	1.69	2.18	2.7	3.25
0.05	0.0	0.1	0.35	0.71	1.15	1.64	2.17	2.73	3.33	3.94
0.95	3.84	5.99	7.81	9.49	11.07	12.59	14.07	15.51	16.92	18.31
0.975	5.02	7.38	9.35	11.14	12.83	14.45	16.01	17.53	19.02	20.48
0.99	6.63	9.21	11.34	13.28	15.09	16.81	18.48	20.09	21.67	23.21
0.995	7.88	10.6	12.84	14.86	16.75	18.55	20.28	21.95	23.59	25.19

Table A.9: Values of z for given values of the distribution function $F(z)$ with $m = 11 - 20$.

$F(z)$	Degrees of Freedom (m)									
	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
0.005	2.6	3.07	3.57	4.07	4.6	5.14	5.7	6.26	6.84	7.43
0.01	3.05	3.57	4.11	4.66	5.23	5.81	6.41	7.01	7.63	8.26
0.025	3.82	4.4	5.01	5.63	6.26	6.91	7.56	8.23	8.91	9.59
0.05	4.57	5.23	5.89	6.57	7.26	7.96	8.67	9.39	10.12	10.85
0.95	19.68	21.03	22.36	23.68	25.0	26.3	27.59	28.87	30.14	31.41
0.975	21.92	23.34	24.74	26.12	27.49	28.85	30.19	31.53	32.85	34.17
0.99	24.72	26.22	27.69	29.14	30.58	32.0	33.41	34.81	36.19	37.57
0.995	26.76	28.3	29.82	31.32	32.8	34.27	35.72	37.16	38.58	40.0

Table A.10: Values of z for given values of the distribution function $F(z)$ with $m = 21 - 30$.

$F(z)$	Degrees of Freedom (m)									
	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30
0.005	8.03	8.64	9.26	9.89	10.52	11.16	11.81	12.46	13.12	13.79
0.01	8.9	9.54	10.2	10.86	11.52	12.2	12.88	13.56	14.26	14.95

Continued on next page

Table A.10: Values of z for given values of the distribution function $F(z)$ with $m = 21 - 30$. (Continued)

$F(z)$	Degrees of Freedom (m)									
	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30
0.025	10.28	10.98	11.69	12.4	13.12	13.84	14.57	15.31	16.05	16.79
0.05	11.59	12.34	13.09	13.85	14.61	15.38	16.15	16.93	17.71	18.49
0.95	32.67	33.92	35.17	36.42	37.65	38.89	40.11	41.34	42.56	43.77
0.975	35.48	36.78	38.08	39.36	40.65	41.92	43.19	44.46	45.72	46.98
0.99	38.93	40.29	41.64	42.98	44.31	45.64	46.96	48.28	49.59	50.89
0.995	41.4	42.8	44.18	45.56	46.93	48.29	49.64	50.99	52.34	53.67

A.6 F-Distribution

Table A.11: Values of z for which the distribution function $F(z)$ has the value 0.95

n	Degrees of Freedom (m)								
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
1	161.45	199.5	215.71	224.58	230.16	233.99	236.77	238.88	240.54
2	18.51	19.0	19.16	19.25	19.3	19.33	19.35	19.37	19.38
3	10.13	9.55	9.28	9.12	9.01	8.94	8.89	8.85	8.81
4	7.71	6.94	6.59	6.39	6.26	6.16	6.09	6.04	6.0
5	6.61	5.79	5.41	5.19	5.05	4.95	4.88	4.82	4.77
6	5.99	5.14	4.76	4.53	4.39	4.28	4.21	4.15	4.1
7	5.59	4.74	4.35	4.12	3.97	3.87	3.79	3.73	3.68
8	5.32	4.46	4.07	3.84	3.69	3.58	3.5	3.44	3.39
9	5.12	4.26	3.86	3.63	3.48	3.37	3.29	3.23	3.18
10	4.96	4.1	3.71	3.48	3.33	3.22	3.14	3.07	3.02
11	4.84	3.98	3.59	3.36	3.2	3.09	3.01	2.95	2.9
12	4.75	3.89	3.49	3.26	3.11	3.0	2.91	2.85	2.8
13	4.67	3.81	3.41	3.18	3.03	2.92	2.83	2.77	2.71
14	4.6	3.74	3.34	3.11	2.96	2.85	2.76	2.7	2.65
15	4.54	3.68	3.29	3.06	2.9	2.79	2.71	2.64	2.59
16	4.49	3.63	3.24	3.01	2.85	2.74	2.66	2.59	2.54
17	4.45	3.59	3.2	2.96	2.81	2.7	2.61	2.55	2.49
18	4.41	3.55	3.16	2.93	2.77	2.66	2.58	2.51	2.46
19	4.38	3.52	3.13	2.9	2.74	2.63	2.54	2.48	2.42
20	4.35	3.49	3.1	2.87	2.71	2.6	2.51	2.45	2.39
22	4.3	3.44	3.05	2.82	2.66	2.55	2.46	2.4	2.34
24	4.26	3.4	3.01	2.78	2.62	2.51	2.42	2.36	2.3
26	4.23	3.37	2.98	2.74	2.59	2.47	2.39	2.32	2.27
28	4.2	3.34	2.95	2.71	2.56	2.45	2.36	2.29	2.24
30	4.17	3.32	2.92	2.69	2.53	2.42	2.33	2.27	2.21
32	4.15	3.29	2.9	2.67	2.51	2.4	2.31	2.24	2.19
34	4.13	3.28	2.88	2.65	2.49	2.38	2.29	2.23	2.17
36	4.11	3.26	2.87	2.63	2.48	2.36	2.28	2.21	2.15

Continued on next page

Table A.11: Values of z for which the distribution function $F(z)$ has the value 0.95 (Continued)

n	Degrees of Freedom (m)								
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
38	4.1	3.24	2.85	2.62	2.46	2.35	2.26	2.19	2.14
40	4.08	3.23	2.84	2.61	2.45	2.34	2.25	2.18	2.12
50	4.03	3.18	2.79	2.56	2.4	2.29	2.2	2.13	2.07
60	4.0	3.15	2.76	2.53	2.37	2.25	2.17	2.1	2.04
70	3.98	3.13	2.74	2.5	2.35	2.23	2.14	2.07	2.02
80	3.96	3.11	2.72	2.49	2.33	2.21	2.13	2.06	2.0
90	3.95	3.1	2.71	2.47	2.32	2.2	2.11	2.04	1.99
100	3.94	3.09	2.7	2.46	2.31	2.19	2.1	2.03	1.97
100	3.94	3.09	2.7	2.46	2.31	2.19	2.1	2.03	1.97
150	3.9	3.06	2.66	2.43	2.27	2.16	2.07	2.0	1.94
200	3.89	3.04	2.65	2.42	2.26	2.14	2.06	1.98	1.93
1000	3.85	3.0	2.61	2.38	2.22	2.11	2.02	1.95	1.89

Table A.12: Values of z for which the distribution function $F(z)$ has the value 0.95

n	Degrees of Freedom (m)								
	10	15	20	30	40	50	100	200	500
1	241.88	245.95	248.01	250.1	251.14	251.77	253.04	253.68	254.06
2	19.4	19.43	19.45	19.46	19.47	19.48	19.49	19.49	19.49
3	8.79	8.7	8.66	8.62	8.59	8.58	8.55	8.54	8.53
4	5.96	5.86	5.8	5.75	5.72	5.7	5.66	5.65	5.64
5	4.74	4.62	4.56	4.5	4.46	4.44	4.41	4.39	4.37
6	4.06	3.94	3.87	3.81	3.77	3.75	3.71	3.69	3.68
7	3.64	3.51	3.44	3.38	3.34	3.32	3.27	3.25	3.24
8	3.35	3.22	3.15	3.08	3.04	3.02	2.97	2.95	2.94
9	3.14	3.01	2.94	2.86	2.83	2.8	2.76	2.73	2.72
10	2.98	2.85	2.77	2.7	2.66	2.64	2.59	2.56	2.55
11	2.85	2.72	2.65	2.57	2.53	2.51	2.46	2.43	2.42
12	2.75	2.62	2.54	2.47	2.43	2.4	2.35	2.32	2.31
13	2.67	2.53	2.46	2.38	2.34	2.31	2.26	2.23	2.22

Continued on next page

Table A.12: Values of z for which the distribution function $F(z)$ has the value 0.95 (Continued)

n	Degrees of Freedom (m)								
	10	15	20	30	40	50	100	200	500
14	2.6	2.46	2.39	2.31	2.27	2.24	2.19	2.16	2.14
15	2.54	2.4	2.33	2.25	2.2	2.18	2.12	2.1	2.08
16	2.49	2.35	2.28	2.19	2.15	2.12	2.07	2.04	2.02
17	2.45	2.31	2.23	2.15	2.1	2.08	2.02	1.99	1.97
18	2.41	2.27	2.19	2.11	2.06	2.04	1.98	1.95	1.93
19	2.38	2.23	2.16	2.07	2.03	2.0	1.94	1.91	1.89
20	2.35	2.2	2.12	2.04	1.99	1.97	1.91	1.88	1.86
22	2.3	2.15	2.07	1.98	1.94	1.91	1.85	1.82	1.8
24	2.25	2.11	2.03	1.94	1.89	1.86	1.8	1.77	1.75
26	2.22	2.07	1.99	1.9	1.85	1.82	1.76	1.73	1.71
28	2.19	2.04	1.96	1.87	1.82	1.79	1.73	1.69	1.67
30	2.16	2.01	1.93	1.84	1.79	1.76	1.7	1.66	1.64
32	2.14	1.99	1.91	1.82	1.77	1.74	1.67	1.63	1.61
34	2.12	1.97	1.89	1.8	1.75	1.71	1.65	1.61	1.59
36	2.11	1.95	1.87	1.78	1.73	1.69	1.62	1.59	1.56
38	2.09	1.94	1.85	1.76	1.71	1.68	1.61	1.57	1.54
40	2.08	1.92	1.84	1.74	1.69	1.66	1.59	1.55	1.53
50	2.03	1.87	1.78	1.69	1.63	1.6	1.52	1.48	1.46
60	1.99	1.84	1.75	1.65	1.59	1.56	1.48	1.44	1.41
70	1.97	1.81	1.72	1.62	1.57	1.53	1.45	1.4	1.37
80	1.95	1.79	1.7	1.6	1.54	1.51	1.43	1.38	1.35
90	1.94	1.78	1.69	1.59	1.53	1.49	1.41	1.36	1.33
100	1.93	1.77	1.68	1.57	1.52	1.48	1.39	1.34	1.31
100	1.93	1.77	1.68	1.57	1.52	1.48	1.39	1.34	1.31
150	1.89	1.73	1.64	1.54	1.48	1.44	1.34	1.29	1.25
200	1.88	1.72	1.62	1.52	1.46	1.41	1.32	1.26	1.22
1000	1.84	1.68	1.58	1.47	1.41	1.36	1.26	1.19	1.13

Table A.13: Values of z for which the distribution function $F(z)$ has the value 0.99

n	Degrees of Freedom (m)								
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
1	4052.18	4999.5	5403.35	5624.58	5763.65	5858.99	5928.36	5981.07	6022.47
2	98.5	99.0	99.17	99.25	99.3	99.33	99.36	99.37	99.39
3	34.12	30.82	29.46	28.71	28.24	27.91	27.67	27.49	27.35
4	21.2	18.0	16.69	15.98	15.52	15.21	14.98	14.8	14.66
5	16.26	13.27	12.06	11.39	10.97	10.67	10.46	10.29	10.16
6	13.75	10.92	9.78	9.15	8.75	8.47	8.26	8.1	7.98
7	12.25	9.55	8.45	7.85	7.46	7.19	6.99	6.84	6.72
8	11.26	8.65	7.59	7.01	6.63	6.37	6.18	6.03	5.91
9	10.56	8.02	6.99	6.42	6.06	5.8	5.61	5.47	5.35
10	10.04	7.56	6.55	5.99	5.64	5.39	5.2	5.06	4.94
11	9.65	7.21	6.22	5.67	5.32	5.07	4.89	4.74	4.63
12	9.33	6.93	5.95	5.41	5.06	4.82	4.64	4.5	4.39
13	9.07	6.7	5.74	5.21	4.86	4.62	4.44	4.3	4.19
14	8.86	6.51	5.56	5.04	4.69	4.46	4.28	4.14	4.03
15	8.68	6.36	5.42	4.89	4.56	4.32	4.14	4.0	3.89
16	8.53	6.23	5.29	4.77	4.44	4.2	4.03	3.89	3.78
17	8.4	6.11	5.18	4.67	4.34	4.1	3.93	3.79	3.68
18	8.29	6.01	5.09	4.58	4.25	4.01	3.84	3.71	3.6
19	8.18	5.93	5.01	4.5	4.17	3.94	3.77	3.63	3.52
20	8.1	5.85	4.94	4.43	4.1	3.87	3.7	3.56	3.46
22	7.95	5.72	4.82	4.31	3.99	3.76	3.59	3.45	3.35
24	7.82	5.61	4.72	4.22	3.9	3.67	3.5	3.36	3.26
26	7.72	5.53	4.64	4.14	3.82	3.59	3.42	3.29	3.18
28	7.64	5.45	4.57	4.07	3.75	3.53	3.36	3.23	3.12
30	7.56	5.39	4.51	4.02	3.7	3.47	3.3	3.17	3.07
32	7.5	5.34	4.46	3.97	3.65	3.43	3.26	3.13	3.02
34	7.44	5.29	4.42	3.93	3.61	3.39	3.22	3.09	2.98
36	7.4	5.25	4.38	3.89	3.57	3.35	3.18	3.05	2.95
38	7.35	5.21	4.34	3.86	3.54	3.32	3.15	3.02	2.92
40	7.31	5.18	4.31	3.83	3.51	3.29	3.12	2.99	2.89

Continued on next page

Table A.13: Values of z for which the distribution function $F(z)$ has the value 0.99 (Continued)

n	Degrees of Freedom (m)								
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
50	7.17	5.06	4.2	3.72	3.41	3.19	3.02	2.89	2.78
60	7.08	4.98	4.13	3.65	3.34	3.12	2.95	2.82	2.72
70	7.01	4.92	4.07	3.6	3.29	3.07	2.91	2.78	2.67
80	6.96	4.88	4.04	3.56	3.26	3.04	2.87	2.74	2.64
90	6.93	4.85	4.01	3.53	3.23	3.01	2.84	2.72	2.61
100	6.9	4.82	3.98	3.51	3.21	2.99	2.82	2.69	2.59
100	6.9	4.82	3.98	3.51	3.21	2.99	2.82	2.69	2.59
150	6.81	4.75	3.91	3.45	3.14	2.92	2.76	2.63	2.53
200	6.76	4.71	3.88	3.41	3.11	2.89	2.73	2.6	2.5
1000	6.66	4.63	3.8	3.34	3.04	2.82	2.66	2.53	2.43

Table A.14: Values of z for which the distribution function $F(z)$ has the value 0.99

n	Degrees of Freedom (m)								
	10	15	20	30	40	50	100	200	500
1	6055.85	6157.28	6208.73	6260.65	6286.78	6302.52	6334.11	6349.97	6359.5
2	99.4	99.43	99.45	99.47	99.47	99.48	99.49	99.49	99.5
3	27.23	26.87	26.69	26.5	26.41	26.35	26.24	26.18	26.15
4	14.55	14.2	14.02	13.84	13.75	13.69	13.58	13.52	13.49
5	10.05	9.72	9.55	9.38	9.29	9.24	9.13	9.08	9.04
6	7.87	7.56	7.4	7.23	7.14	7.09	6.99	6.93	6.9
7	6.62	6.31	6.16	5.99	5.91	5.86	5.75	5.7	5.67
8	5.81	5.52	5.36	5.2	5.12	5.07	4.96	4.91	4.88
9	5.26	4.96	4.81	4.65	4.57	4.52	4.41	4.36	4.33
10	4.85	4.56	4.41	4.25	4.17	4.12	4.01	3.96	3.93
11	4.54	4.25	4.1	3.94	3.86	3.81	3.71	3.66	3.62
12	4.3	4.01	3.86	3.7	3.62	3.57	3.47	3.41	3.38
13	4.1	3.82	3.66	3.51	3.43	3.38	3.27	3.22	3.19
14	3.94	3.66	3.51	3.35	3.27	3.22	3.11	3.06	3.03
15	3.8	3.52	3.37	3.21	3.13	3.08	2.98	2.92	2.89

Continued on next page

Table A.14: Values of z for which the distribution function $F(z)$ has the value 0.99 (Continued)

n	Degrees of Freedom (m)								
	10	15	20	30	40	50	100	200	500
16	3.69	3.41	3.26	3.1	3.02	2.97	2.86	2.81	2.78
17	3.59	3.31	3.16	3.0	2.92	2.87	2.76	2.71	2.68
18	3.51	3.23	3.08	2.92	2.84	2.78	2.68	2.62	2.59
19	3.43	3.15	3.0	2.84	2.76	2.71	2.6	2.55	2.51
20	3.37	3.09	2.94	2.78	2.69	2.64	2.54	2.48	2.44
22	3.26	2.98	2.83	2.67	2.58	2.53	2.42	2.36	2.33
24	3.17	2.89	2.74	2.58	2.49	2.44	2.33	2.27	2.24
26	3.09	2.81	2.66	2.5	2.42	2.36	2.25	2.19	2.16
28	3.03	2.75	2.6	2.44	2.35	2.3	2.19	2.13	2.09
30	2.98	2.7	2.55	2.39	2.3	2.25	2.13	2.07	2.03
32	2.93	2.65	2.5	2.34	2.25	2.2	2.08	2.02	1.98
34	2.89	2.61	2.46	2.3	2.21	2.16	2.04	1.98	1.94
36	2.86	2.58	2.43	2.26	2.18	2.12	2.0	1.94	1.9
38	2.83	2.55	2.4	2.23	2.14	2.09	1.97	1.9	1.86
40	2.8	2.52	2.37	2.2	2.11	2.06	1.94	1.87	1.83
50	2.7	2.42	2.27	2.1	2.01	1.95	1.82	1.76	1.71
60	2.63	2.35	2.2	2.03	1.94	1.88	1.75	1.68	1.63
70	2.59	2.31	2.15	1.98	1.89	1.83	1.7	1.62	1.57
80	2.55	2.27	2.12	1.94	1.85	1.79	1.65	1.58	1.53
90	2.52	2.24	2.09	1.92	1.82	1.76	1.62	1.55	1.49
100	2.5	2.22	2.07	1.89	1.8	1.74	1.6	1.52	1.47
100	2.5	2.22	2.07	1.89	1.8	1.74	1.6	1.52	1.47
150	2.44	2.16	2.0	1.83	1.73	1.66	1.52	1.43	1.38
200	2.41	2.13	1.97	1.79	1.69	1.63	1.48	1.39	1.33
1000	2.34	2.06	1.9	1.72	1.61	1.54	1.38	1.28	1.19

Bibliography

- [1] leonbloy (<https://math.stackexchange.com/users/312/leonbloy>). *Maximum Likelihood Estimate and Second derivative test?* Mathematics Stack Exchange. URL:<https://math.stackexchange.com/q/2241123> (version: 2017-04-19). eprint: <https://math.stackexchange.com/q/2241123>. URL: <https://math.stackexchange.com/q/2241123>.
- [2] Rust John. "Maximum likelihood estimation of discrete control processes". In: *SIAM journal on control and optimization* 26.5 (1988), pp. 1006–1024.
- [3] Yacine Aït-Sahalia and Robert Kimmel. "Maximum likelihood estimation of stochastic volatility models". In: *Journal of financial economics* 83.2 (2007), pp. 413–452.
- [4] Kubrom Hisho Teka. "Parameter estimation of the Black-Scholes-Merton model". In: (2013).
- [5] William CL Stewart and Elizabeth A Thompson. "Improving estimates of genetic maps: a maximum likelihood approach". In: *Biometrics* 62.3 (2006), pp. 728–734.
- [6] Aravinda Chakravarti, Laura K Lasher, and Jillian E Reefer. "A maximum likelihood method for estimating genome length using genetic linkage data." In: *Genetics* 128.1 (1991), pp. 175–182.
- [7] Jerzy Neyman. "On the two different aspects of the representative method: the method of stratified sampling and the method of purposive selection". In: *Breakthroughs in statistics: Methodology and distribution*. Springer, 1992, pp. 123–150.
- [8] Jerzy Neyman. "Outline of a theory of statistical estimation based on the classical theory of probability". In: *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London. Series A, Mathematical and Physical Sciences* 236.767 (1937), pp. 333–380.
- [9] Jerzy Neyman and Egon Sharpe Pearson. "IX. On the problem of the most efficient tests of statistical hypotheses". In: *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London. Series A, Containing Papers of a Mathematical or Physical Character* 231.694-706 (1933), pp. 289–337.

